

## SECTION F — MECHANICAL ENGINEERING; LIGHTING; HEATING; WEAPONS; BLASTING

### F16 ENGINEERING ELEMENTS OR UNITS; GENERAL MEASURES FOR PRODUCING AND MAINTAINING EFFECTIVE FUNCTIONING OF MACHINES OR INSTALLATIONS; THERMAL INSULATION IN GENERAL

#### F16B DEVICES FOR FASTENING OR SECURING CONSTRUCTIONAL ELEMENTS OR MACHINE PARTS TOGETHER, e.g. NAILS, BOLTS, CIRCLIPS, CLAMPS, CLIPS OR WEDGES; JOINTS OR JOINTING (couplings for transmitting rotation F16D)

##### Note(s) [5, 2006.01]

Attention is drawn to:

- a. the Note following group E04B 1/38;
- b. the following places:
  - A44B.....Buckles, slide fasteners
  - A47G 3/00.....Ornamental heads for nails, screws, or the like
  - B42F 3/00.....Means, not using staples, for attaching sheets temporarily together
  - E01B 9/10.....Screws or bolts for railway sleepers
  - E01B 11/00.....Rail joints
  - E04.....Connections for building
  - E04D 13/08.....Clamping means for down pipes for roof drainage
  - E04F 13/21.....Fastening means specially adapted for covering or lining elements for buildings
  - E04G 5/04.....Fastening scaffolds against buildings
  - E04G 7/00.....Scaffolding couplings
  - E05C.....Bolts or fasteners for wings, specially for doors or windows
  - F16C 29/10.....Locking bearings for parts moving only linearly
  - F16G 17/00.....Hooks as integral parts of chains
  - F16L.....Pipe joints
  - F16L 3/00.....Supports for pipes, cables or protective tubing, e.g. hangers, holders, clamps, cleats, clips, brackets
  - F16L 33/02.....Clips for connecting hoses to rigid members
  - H01F 7/00.....Magnetic holding devices
  - H02N 13/00.....Electrostatic holding devices.

##### Subclass index

###### TYPES OF FASTENING

- By: clamping, wedging.....2/00, 3/00
- By: shrinking or force fit; sticking or pressing together; penetration of one member into a hole in another.....4/00, 11/00, 17/00
- Fastening of plates, strips, bars, or tubes together or to flat surfaces.....5/00, 7/00, 9/00
- For specific applications
  - for furniture.....12/00
  - for fixing in walls.....13/00
  - by screw-thread modified in view of tensile load.....31/00

###### FASTENING MEANS

###### General

- clamps; clips; wedges, keys.....2/00, 3/00
- dowels.....13/00
- other fastening means.....1/00, 45/00, 47/00

###### Without screw-thread

- nails, staples; bolts, pins, or rivets.....15/00, 19/00
- locking stud-and-socket fastenings against axial movement.....21/00

###### With screw-thread

- screws; bolts, break-bolts, nuts.....25/00, 15/06, 27/00, 27/00, 31/00, 35/00, 37/00
- features common to bolts and screws.....23/00, 27/00, 33/00
- deformation of nut or equivalent while fastening; locking of screws, bolts, or nuts.....29/00, 39/00
- Accessories for fastening means.....41/00, 43/00

**1/00 Devices for securing together, or preventing relative movement between, constructional elements or machine parts [1, 2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2]**

Groups F16B 2/00-F16B 47/00 take precedence over group F16B 1/00.

- 1/02 • Means for securing elements of mechanisms after operation (means for bringing members to rest F16D) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • • disengaged by movement of the actuating member of the element (locking of actuators G05G, e.g. G05G 5/00) [1, 2006.01]

**Fastenings for constructional elements or machine parts in general**

**2/00 Friction-grip releasable fastenings** (for cables or ropes, e.g. cleats, F16G 11/00; supports for pipes, cables or protective tubing F16L 3/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 2/02 • Clamps, i.e. with gripping action effected by positive means other than the inherent resistance to deformation of the material of the fastening [1, 2006.01]
- 2/04 • • internal, i.e. with spreading action (F16B 2/14-F16B 2/18 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 2/06 • • external, i.e. with contracting action (F16B 2/14-F16B 2/18 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 2/08 • • • using bands (clips for connecting hoses to rigid members F16L 33/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 2/10 • • • using pivoting jaws [1, 2006.01]
- 2/12 • • • using sliding jaws [1, 2006.01]
- 2/14 • • using wedges [1, 2006.01]
- 2/16 • • using rollers or balls [1, 2006.01]
- 2/18 • • using cams, levers, eccentrics, or toggles [1, 2006.01]
- 2/20 • Clips, i.e. with gripping action effected solely by the inherent resistance to deformation of the material of the fastening [1, 2006.01]
- 2/22 • • of resilient material, e.g. rubbery material [1, 2006.01]
- 2/24 • • • of metal [1, 2006.01]
- 2/26 • • of pliable non-resilient material, e.g. plant tie [1, 2006.01]

**3/00 Key-type connections; Keys** (F16B 2/00 takes precedence; for rods or tubes mutually F16B 7/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 3/04 • using keys formed of wire or other flexible material, to be inserted through an opening giving access to grooves in the adjacent surfaces of the parts to be connected [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • using taper sleeves [1, 2006.01]

**4/00 Shrinkage connection, e.g. assembled with the parts at different temperature; Force fits** (restricted to metal parts or objects B23P 11/02); **Non-releasable friction-grip fastenings** (F16B 2/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]

**5/00 Joining sheets or plates to one another or to strips or bars parallel to them** (by sticking together F16B 11/00; dowel connections F16B 13/00; pins, including deformable elements F16B 19/00; covering of walls E04F 13/00; fastening signs, plates, panels, or boards to a supporting structure, fastening readily-detachable elements, e.g. letters, to signs, plates, panels, or boards, G09F 7/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 5/01 • by means of fastening elements specially adapted for honeycomb panels [1, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • by means of fastening members using screw-thread (construction of screw-threaded connections F16B 25/00-F16B 39/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • by means of riveting (rivets F16B 19/04) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • by means of clamps or clips (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/07 • by means of multiple interengaging protrusions on the surfaces, e.g. hooks, coils [1, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • by means of welds or the like (welding B23K) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • by means of bayonet connections (fastening devices locking by rotation F16B 21/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/12 • Fastening strips or bars to sheets or plates, e.g. rubber strips, decorative strips for motor vehicles, by means of clips (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00; fastening rods or tubular parts to flat surfaces at an angle F16B 9/00; clips for connecting hoses to rigid members F16L 33/02) [1, 2006.01]

**7/00 Connections of rods or tubes, e.g. of non-circular section, mutually, including resilient connections** (umbrella frames A45B 25/02; welding or soldering of connections B23K; vehicle connections in general B60D; railway couplings B61G; bicycle frames B62K; couplings for transmitting rotation F16D; couplings for tubes conveying fluid F16L) [1, 2006.01]

- 7/02 • with conical parts [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • Clamping or clipping connections (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • Turnbuckles (for cables, ropes, or wire F16G 11/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • Pipe saddles (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • Telescoping systems (for scaffolding E04G 25/04; telescope props for mining E21D 15/14-E21D 15/46; stands or trestles as supports for apparatus or articles placed thereon F16M 11/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • • locking only in extreme extended position [1, 2006.01]
- 7/14 • • locking in intermediate positions [1, 2006.01]
- 7/16 • • • locking only against movement in one direction [1, 2006.01]
- 7/18 • using screw-thread elements [1, 2006.01]
- 7/20 • using bayonet connections [1, 2006.01]
- 7/22 • using hooks or like elements [1, 2006.01]

**9/00 Connections of rods or tubular parts to flat surfaces at an angle** (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00; making press-fit connections B23P 11/00, B23P 19/00; fluid-tight connecting of pipes to reservoirs, sheets, or the like F16L, e.g. joining pipes to walls F16L 41/00; supports for pipes, cables or protective tubing F16L 3/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 9/02 • Detachable connections [1, 2006.01]

- 11/00 Connecting constructional elements or machine parts by sticking or pressing them together, e.g. cold pressure welding** (non-electric welding in general B23K; methods of using adhesives independently of the form of the surfaces joined C09J 5/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 12/00 Jointing of furniture or the like, e.g. hidden from exterior** (F16B 2/00-F16B 11/00 take precedence; fastening means *per se* F16B 13/00-F16B 47/00; wood-working B27) [1, 2006.01]
- 12/02 • Joints between panels and corner posts [1, 2006.01]
- 12/04 • Non-loosenable joints for non-metal furniture parts, e.g. glued [1, 2006.01]
- 12/06 • Non-loosenable joints for metal furniture parts [1, 2006.01]
- 12/08 • • without use of separate connecting elements [1, 2006.01]
- 12/10 • using pegs, bolts, tenons, clamps, clips, or the like (glued F16B 12/04; fastening means *per se* F16B 15/00-F16B 47/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 12/12 • • for non-metal furniture parts, e.g. made of wood, of plastics [1, 2006.01]
- 12/14 • • • using threaded bolts or screws [1, 2006.01]
- 12/16 • • • • using self-tapping screws [1, 2006.01]
- 12/18 • • • • using drawing bars [1, 2006.01]
- 12/20 • • • using clamps, clips, wedges, sliding bolts, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 12/22 • • • using keyhole-shaped slots and pins [1, 2006.01]
- 12/24 • • • using separate pins, dowels, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 12/26 • • • using snap-action elements [1, 2006.01]
- 12/28 • • for metal furniture parts [1, 2006.01]
- 12/30 • • • using threaded bolts [1, 2006.01]
- 12/32 • • • using clamps, clips, wedges, sliding bolts, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 12/34 • • • using keyhole-shaped slots and pins [1, 2006.01]
- 12/36 • • • using separate pins, dowels, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 12/38 • • • using snap-action elements [1, 2006.01]
- 12/40 • Joints for furniture tubing [1, 2006.01]
- 12/42 • • connecting furniture tubing to non-tubular parts [1, 2006.01]
- 12/44 • Leg joints; Corner joints [1, 2006.01]
- 12/46 • • Non-metal corner connections [1, 2006.01]
- 12/48 • • Non-metal leg connections (F16B 12/46 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 12/50 • • Metal corner connections [1, 2006.01]
- 12/52 • • Metal leg connections (F16B 12/50 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 12/54 • Fittings for bedsteads or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 12/56 • • Brackets for bedsteads; Coupling joints consisting of bolts or the like; Latches therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 12/58 • • Tapered connectors for bed rails [1, 2006.01]
- 12/60 • • Fittings for detachable side panels [1, 2006.01]
- 13/00 Dowels or other devices fastened in walls or the like by inserting them in holes made therein for that purpose** (nails F16B 15/00; self-locking pins or bolts in general, stud-and-socket releasable fastenings F16B 21/00; dowels or bolts for railroad sleepers E01B 9/00; means for anchoring structural elements or bulkheads specially adapted to foundation engineering E02D 5/74; bolts or dowels used while laying bricks or casting concrete E04B 1/38; setting anchoring bolts in shafts, tunnels or galleries E21D 20/00; anchoring bolts for shafts, tunnels or galleries E21D 21/00) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • in one piece with protrusions or ridges on the shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • with parts gripping in the hole or behind the reverse side of the wall after inserting from the front (friction-grip releasable fastenings in general F16B 2/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • combined with expanding sleeve [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • with separate gripping parts moved into their final position in relation to the body of the device without further manual operation [1, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • • with separate gripping parts moved into their final position in relation to the body of the device by a separate operation (F16B 13/06 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • Separate metal dowel sleeves fastened by inserting the screw, nail, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 13/13 • • self-cutting [2, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • Non-metallic plugs or sleeves; Use of liquid, loose solid or kneadable material therefor [1, 5, 2006.01]
- Fastening means without screw-thread**
- 15/00 Nails; Staples** (surgical staples A61B 17/064; manufacture of nails or staples B21G; railway spikes E01B 9/06) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/02 • with specially shaped heads, e.g. with enlarged surfaces (ornaments for furniture A47B 95/04; removable ornamental heads for nails A47G 3/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • with spreading shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • with barbs, e.g. for metal parts; Drive screws [1, 2006.01]
- 15/08 • formed in integral series but easily separable [1, 2006.01]
- 17/00 Fastening means without screw-thread for connecting constructional elements or machine parts by a part of or on one member entering a hole in the other** (construction of bolts, pins, or rivets F16B 19/00; riveting F16B 19/04; means for preventing withdrawal of a pin, spigot, or the like from its operative position, stud-and-socket releasable fastenings F16B 21/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/00 Bolts without screw-thread; Pins, including deformable elements** (in screwed connections F16B 29/00); **Rivets** (means for preventing withdrawal F16B 21/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/02 • Bolts or sleeves for positioning of machine parts, e.g. notched taper pins, fitting pins, sleeves, eccentric positioning rings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • Rivets; Spigots or the like fastened by riveting (lead seals G09F 3/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/05 • • Bolts fastening by swaged-on collars (F16B 19/08 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • • Solid rivets made in one piece [1, 2006.01]

## F16B

- 19/08 • • Hollow rivets; Multi-part rivets [1, 2006.01]
- 19/10 • • • fastened by expanding mechanically [1, 2006.01]
- 19/12 • • • fastened by fluid pressure, including by explosion (bolts shot by means of detonation-operated nailing tools into concrete constructions, metal walls, or the like F16B 19/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/14 • Bolts or the like for shooting into concrete constructions, metal walls, or the like by means of detonation-operated nailing tools (tools therefor B25C, B27F) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/00 **Means without screw-thread for preventing relative axial movement of a pin, spigot, shaft, or the like and a member surrounding it** (riveted or deformable spigots F16B 19/04; for gudgeon pins F16J 1/18); **Stud-and-socket releasable fastenings without screw-thread** [1, 2006.01]
- 21/02 • Releasable fastening devices locking by rotation (with snap action F16B 21/06; studs or coupling-pins with resilient protrusions F16B 21/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/04 • • with bayonet catch [1, 2006.01]
- 21/06 • Releasable fastening devices with snap action [1, 2006.01]
- 21/07 • • in which the socket has a resilient part [1, 2006.01]
- 21/08 • • in which the stud, pin, or spigot has a resilient part (wall-dowels F16B 13/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/09 • Releasable fastening devices with a stud engaging a keyhole slot [1, 2006.01]
- 21/10 • by separate parts (key-type connection F16B 3/00; locking screws or nuts against rotation by such means F16B 39/04) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/12 • • with locking-pins or split-pins thrust into holes [1, 2006.01]
- 21/14 • • • Details of locking-pins or split-pins [1, 2006.01]
- 21/16 • • with grooves or notches in the pin or shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 21/18 • • • with circlips or like resilient retaining devices; Details (spring-washers for locking nuts F16B 39/24; adjusting-rings F16B 43/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/20 • • for bolts or shafts without holes, grooves, or notches for locking members [1, 2006.01]

### Fastening means using screw-thread

- 23/00 **Specially-shaped heads of bolts or screws for rotations by a tool** [1, 2006.01]
- 25/00 **Screws that form threads in the body into which they are screwed, e.g. wood screws, self-tapping screws** [1, 4, 2006.01]
- 25/02 • by a cutting and material removing action, e.g. fluted self-tapping screws [4, 2006.01]
- 25/04 • by a slicing and material displacing action, e.g. wood screws with sharp thread crests [4, 2006.01]
- 25/06 • by swaging, i.e. material deforming action [4, 2006.01]
- 25/08 • by a combination of any two or all of the actions provided for in groups F16B 25/02-F16B 25/06 [4, 2006.01]
- 25/10 • Screws performing an additional function to thread-forming, e.g. drill screws [4, 2006.01]

- 27/00 **Bolts, screws, or nuts formed in integral series but easily separable, particularly for use in automatic machines** [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 **Screwed connection with deformation of nut or auxiliary member while fastening** (wall-dowels F16B 13/00; members deformed for locking screws, bolts or nuts F16B 39/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/00 **Screwed connections specially modified in view of tensile load; Break-bolts** (shape of thread F16B 33/04) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/02 • for indicating or limiting tensile load [1, 2006.01]
- 31/04 • for maintaining constant tensile load [1, 2006.01]
- 31/06 • having regard to possibility of fatigue rupture [1, 2006.01]
- 33/00 **Features common to bolt and nut** (wall-dowels F16B 13/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/02 • Shape of thread; Special thread-forms (used as screw-locking device F16B 39/30) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • • in view of tensile load [1, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • Surface treatment of parts furnished with screw-thread, e.g. for preventing seizure [1, 2006.01]
- 35/00 **Screw-bolts; Stay bolts; Screw-threaded studs; Screws; Set screws** (wall-dowels F16B 13/00; thread-cutting screws F16B 25/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 35/02 • divided longitudinally [1, 2006.01]
- 35/04 • with specially-shaped head or shaft in order to fix the bolt on or in an object (locking the bolt against turning in the object by the use of accessory parts F16B 39/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 35/06 • • Specially-shaped heads (special shape in order to rotate the bolt F16B 23/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/00 **Nuts or like thread-engaging members** (wall-dowels F16B 13/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/02 • made of thin sheet material (fastening to surfaces F16B 37/04) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/04 • Devices for fastening nuts to surfaces, e.g. sheets, plates [1, 2006.01]
- 37/06 • • by means of welding or riveting [1, 2006.01]
- 37/08 • Quickly-detachable nuts, e.g. consisting of two or more parts; Nuts movable along the bolt after tilting the nut [1, 2006.01]
- 37/10 • • divided parallel or about parallel to the bolt axis [1, 2006.01]
- 37/12 • with thread-engaging surfaces formed by inserted coil-springs, discs, or the like; Independent pieces of wound wire used as nuts; Threaded inserts for holes [1, 2006.01]
- 37/14 • Cap nuts; Nut caps or bolt caps [1, 2006.01]
- 37/16 • Wing nuts (F16B 37/14 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/00 **Locking of screws, bolts, or nuts** (wall-dowels F16B 13/00; locking of bottle closures B65D; locking of rail-fastening bolts for permanent ways E01B 9/12; locking of fastening means for railway fishplates E01B 11/38; locking devices for valves or cocks F16K) [1, 2006.01]

### Note(s)

In this group, heads of screws or bolts are put on a par with nuts as far as pertains to locking; an object into which a screw is threaded is put on a par with a nut.

- 39/01 • specially adapted to prevent loosening at extreme temperatures [1, 2006.01]
- 39/02 • in which the locking takes place after screwing down (F16B 39/01 takes precedence; split-pins, circlips, or the like for preventing relative axial movement only F16B 21/10; fastening nuts by welding or riveting F16B 37/06) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • • with a member penetrating the screw-threaded surface of at least one part, e.g. a pin, wedge, cotter-pin, screw [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • • • with a pin or staple parallel to the bolt axis [1, 2006.01]
- 39/08 • • with a cap interacting with the nut, connected to the bolt by a pin or cotter-pin [1, 2006.01]
- 39/10 • • by a plate or ring immovable with regard to the bolt or object (F16B 39/08 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/12 • • by means of locknuts [1, 2006.01]
- 39/14 • • • made of thin sheet material or formed as spring washers (locknuts *per se* made of thin sheet material F16B 37/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/16 • • • in which the screw-thread of the locknut differs from that of the nut [1, 2006.01]
- 39/18 • • • • in which the locknut grips with screw-thread in the nuts as well as on the bolt [1, 2006.01]
- 39/20 • • by means of steel wire or the like (F16B 39/10 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/22 • in which the locking takes place during screwing down or tightening (F16B 39/01 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/24 • • by means of washers, spring washers, or resilient plates that lock against the object (locking to the screw-thread F16B 39/14, F16B 39/36) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/26 • • • with spring washers fastened to the nut or bolt-head [1, 2006.01]
- 39/28 • • by special members on, or shape of, the nut or bolt (F16B 39/26 takes precedence; locknuts F16B 39/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/282 • • • Locking by means of special shape of work-engaging surfaces, e.g. notched or toothed nuts [1, 2006.01]
- 39/284 • • • Locking by means of elastic deformation (F16B 39/38 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/286 • • • • caused by saw cuts [1, 2006.01]
- 39/30 • • • Locking exclusively by special shape of the screw-thread [1, 2006.01]
- 39/32 • • • Locking by means of a pawl or pawl-like tongue [1, 2006.01]
- 39/34 • • • Locking by deformable inserts or like parts [1, 2006.01]
- 39/36 • • • with conical locking parts, which may be split, including use of separate rings co-operating therewith [1, 2006.01]
- 39/38 • • • with a second part of the screw-thread which may be resiliently mounted (F16B 39/30 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Measures against loss of bolts, nuts, or pins; Measures against unauthorised operation of bolts, nuts, or pins (seals G09F 3/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 43/00 Washers or equivalent devices; Other devices for supporting bolt-heads or nuts (circlips F16B 21/18; with special means for locking bolts or nuts F16B 39/10, F16B 39/24) [1, 2006.01]**
- 43/02 • with special provisions for engaging surfaces which are not perpendicular to a bolt axis or do not surround the bolt [1, 2006.01]
- 45/00 Hooks; Eyes (if the attaching parts or means are concerned, groups F16B 13/00, F16B 15/00, F16B 19/00, F16B 25/00, F16B 35/00, F16B 47/00 take precedence; for hanging pictures or the like A47G 1/16; towing hooks for ships B63B 21/58; for hoisting or hauling purposes B66C; hooks or eyes with integral parts designed to facilitate quick attachment to cables or ropes at any point F16G 11/14) [1, 2006.01]**
- 45/02 • Hooks with pivoting closing member [1, 2006.01]
- 45/04 • Hooks with sliding closing member [1, 2006.01]
- 45/06 • Hooks with two symmetrically-pivoting hook parts [1, 2006.01]
- 47/00 Suction cups for attaching purposes; Equivalent means using adhesives [1, 2006.01]**

**F16C SHAFTS; FLEXIBLE SHAFTS; MECHANICAL MEANS FOR TRANSMITTING MOVEMENT IN A FLEXIBLE SHEATHING; ELEMENTS OF CRANKSHAFT MECHANISMS; PIVOTS; PIVOTAL CONNECTIONS; ROTARY ENGINEERING ELEMENTS OTHER THAN GEARING, COUPLING, CLUTCH OR BRAKE ELEMENTS; BEARINGS [5]**

**Note(s)**

In this subclass, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:

- "rotary engineering elements other than gearing, coupling, clutch or brake elements" covers any engineering element other than gearing, coupling, clutch or brake elements which rotates in so far as its features are affected only by the fact that it rotates.

**Subclass index**

FLEXIBLE TRANSMISSIONS, SHAFTS, AXLES, CRANKS, ECCENTRICS.....	1/00, 3/00
CROSSHEADS, CONNECTING-RODS.....	5/00, 7/00, 9/00
PIVOTS.....	11/00
ROLLS, DRUMS, DISCS.....	13/00
BEARINGS	
For rotatable parts.....	13/00, 17/00-27/00
For linearly-movable parts.....	29/00
For parts which both rotate and move linearly.....	31/00
For crankshafts or connecting- rods.....	9/00
Not otherwise provided for.....	32/00
Supports; parts or accessories.....	27/00, 35/00, 33/00, 41/00

Cooling; relieving load.....	37/00, 39/00
MAKING, ASSEMBLING.....	33/00, 43/00
CONSTRUCTION OF ROTATABLE BODIES TO RESIST CENTRIFUGAL FORCE.....	15/00

<b>1/00 Flexible shafts</b> (flexible shafts in dental machines for boring or cutting A61C 1/18); <b>Mechanical means for transmitting movement in a flexible sheathing [1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>5/00 Crossheads; Constructions of connecting-rod heads or piston-rod connections rigid with crossheads</b> (piston-rods, i.e. rods rigidly connected to the piston, F16J 7/00) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/02 • for conveying rotary movements <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>7/00 Connecting-rods or like links pivoted at both ends</b> (coupling-rods for locomotive driving-wheels B61C 17/10); <b>Construction of connecting-rod heads</b> (heads rigid with crossheads F16C 5/00) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/04 • • Articulated shafts <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	7/02 • Constructions of connecting-rods with constant length <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/06 • • with guiding-sheathing, tube, or box (F16C 1/04 takes precedence; guiding-sheathings F16C 1/26) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	7/04 • with elastic intermediate part or fluid cushion <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/08 • • End connections <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	7/06 • Adjustable connecting-rods <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/10 • Means for transmitting linear movement in a flexible sheathing, e.g. "Bowden mechanisms" (guiding-sheathings F16C 1/26) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	7/08 • made from sheet metal <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/12 • • Arrangements for transmitting movement to or from the flexible member <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>9/00 Bearings for crankshafts or connecting-rods; Attachment of connecting-rods</b> (lubrication of connecting-rods in connection with crankshafts F16C 3/14; connections to crossheads F16C 5/00, to pistons F16J 1/14) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/14 • • • Construction of the end-piece of the flexible member; Attachment thereof to the flexible member <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	9/02 • Crankshaft bearings <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/16 • • • in which the end-piece is guided rectilinearly <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	9/03 • • Arrangements for adjusting play <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/18 • • • in which the end portion of the flexible member is laid along a curved surface of a pivoted member <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	9/04 • Connecting-rod bearings; Attachment thereof <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/20 • • Construction of flexible members moved to and fro in the sheathing <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	9/06 • • Arrangements for adjusting play in bearings, operating either automatically or not <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/22 • • Adjusting; Compensating length <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>11/00 Pivots; Pivotal connections</b> (arrangements of steering linkage connections B62D 7/16) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/24 • Lubrication; Lubricating equipment <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	11/02 • Trunnions; Crank-pins (fastening crank-pins to webs, crank-pins integral with cranks F16C 3/06, F16C 3/22) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/26 • Construction of guiding-sheathings or guiding-tubes <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	11/04 • Pivotal connections (hinges for doors, windows or wings E05D) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
1/28 • • with built-in bearings <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	11/06 • • Ball-joints; Other joints having more than one degree of angular freedom, i.e. universal joints (universal joints in which flexibility is produced by means of pivots or sliding or rolling connecting parts F16D 3/16) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
<b>3/00 Shafts</b> (flexible shafts F16C 1/00; marine propeller shafts, paddle wheel shafts B63H 23/34); <b>Axles; Cranks; Eccentrics [1, 2006.01]</b>	11/08 • • • with resilient bearings <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/02 • Shafts; Axles <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	11/10 • • Arrangements for locking <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/03 • • telescopic <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	11/12 • • incorporating flexible connections, e.g. leaf springs <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/035 • • • with built-in bearings <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>13/00 Rolls, drums, discs, or the like</b> (guide rollers in feeding webs B65H 27/00; calender rolls, bearings therefor D21G 1/02; rotary drums or rollers for heat-exchange or heat-transfer apparatus F28F 5/02); <b>Bearings or mountings therefor [1, 2006.01]</b>
3/04 • Crankshafts, eccentric-shafts; Cranks, eccentrics <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	13/02 • Bearings <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/06 • • Crankshafts <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	13/04 • • Bearings with only partial enclosure of the member to be borne; Bearings with local support at two or more points <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/08 • • • made in one piece (features relating to lubrication F16C 3/14, to cooling F16C 3/16) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	13/06 • • self-adjusting <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/10 • • • assembled of several parts, e.g. by welding <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	<b>15/00 Construction of rotary bodies to resist centrifugal force</b> (flywheels, correction weights F16F 15/30, F16F 15/32) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>
3/12 • • • • releasably connected <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/14 • • • Features relating to lubrication <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/16 • • • Features relating to cooling <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/18 • • Eccentric-shafts <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/20 • • Shape of crankshafts or eccentric-shafts having regard to balancing <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/22 • • Cranks; Eccentrics (constructional features of crank-pins F16C 11/02) <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/24 • • • with return cranks, i.e. a second crank carried by the crank-pin <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/26 • • • Elastic crank-webs; Resiliently-mounted crank-pins <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/28 • • • Adjustable cranks or eccentrics <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	
3/30 • • • with arrangements for overcoming dead-centres <b>[1, 2006.01]</b>	

**Bearings for rotary parts****17/00 Sliding-contact bearings for exclusively rotary movement** (F16C 32/06 takes precedence; adjustable bearings F16C 23/00, F16C 25/00) [1, 2, 2006.01]

- 17/02 • for radial load only [1, 2006.01]
- 17/03 • • with tiltably-supported segments, e.g. Michell bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 17/04 • for axial load only [1, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • • with tiltably-supported segments, e.g. Michell bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • • for supporting the end face of a shaft or other member, e.g. footstep bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 17/10 • for both radial and axial load [1, 2006.01]
- 17/12 • characterised by features not related to the direction of the load [1, 2006.01]
- 17/14 • • specially adapted for operating in water [1, 2006.01]
- 17/18 • • with floating brasses or bushes, rotatable at a reduced speed [1, 2006.01]
- 17/20 • • with emergency supports or bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 17/22 • • with arrangements compensating for thermal expansion [1, 2006.01]
- 17/24 • • with devices affected by abnormal or undesired conditions, e.g. for preventing overheating, for safety [1, 2006.01]
- 17/26 • Systems consisting of a plurality of sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]

**19/00 Bearings with rolling contact, for exclusively rotary movement** (adjustable bearings F16C 23/00, F16C 25/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 19/02 • with bearing balls essentially of the same size in one or more circular rows [1, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • • for radial load mainly [1, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • • • with a single row of balls [1, 2006.01]
- 19/08 • • • with two or more rows of balls [1, 2006.01]
- 19/10 • • for axial load mainly [1, 2006.01]
- 19/12 • • • for supporting the end face of a shaft or other member, e.g. footstep bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/14 • • for both radial and axial load [1, 2006.01]
- 19/16 • • • with a single row of balls [1, 2006.01]
- 19/18 • • • with two or more rows of balls [1, 2006.01]
- 19/20 • • with loose spacing bodies, e.g. balls, between the bearing balls [1, 2006.01]
- 19/22 • with bearing rollers essentially of the same size in one or more circular rows, e.g. needle bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/24 • • for radial load mainly [1, 2006.01]
- 19/26 • • • with a single row of rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/28 • • • with two or more rows of rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/30 • • for axial load mainly [1, 2006.01]
- 19/32 • • • for supporting the end face of a shaft or other member, e.g. footstep bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/34 • • for both radial and axial load [1, 2006.01]
- 19/36 • • • with a single row of rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/38 • • • with two or more rows of rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/40 • • with loose spacing bodies between the rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/44 • • Needle bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/46 • • • with one row of needles [1, 2006.01]
- 19/48 • • • with two or more rows of needles [1, 2006.01]
- 19/49 • Bearings with both balls and rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 19/50 • Other types of ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 19/52 • with devices affected by abnormal or undesired conditions [1, 2006.01]

- 19/54 • Systems consisting of a plurality of bearings with rolling friction (spindle bearings F16C 35/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/55 • • with intermediate floating rings rotating at reduced speed [1, 2006.01]
- 19/56 • • in which the rolling bodies of one bearing differ in diameter from those of another [1, 2006.01]
- 21/00 Combinations of sliding-contact bearings with ball or roller bearings, for exclusively rotary movement** (F16C 17/24, F16C 19/52take precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 23/00 Bearings for exclusively rotary movement adjustable for aligning or positioning** (F16C 27/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 23/02 • Sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 23/04 • • self-adjusting [1, 2006.01]
- 23/06 • Ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 23/08 • • self-adjusting [1, 2006.01]
- 23/10 • Bearings, parts of which are eccentrically adjustable with respect to each other [1, 2006.01]
- 25/00 Bearings for exclusively rotary movement adjustable for wear or play** (F16C 27/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/02 • Sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 25/04 • • self-adjusting [1, 2006.01]
- 25/06 • Ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 25/08 • • self-adjusting [1, 2006.01]
- 27/00 Elastic or yielding bearings or bearing supports, for exclusively rotary movement** (shock-damping bearings for watches or clocks G04B 31/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 27/02 • Sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 27/04 • Ball or roller bearings, e.g. with resilient rolling bodies [1, 2006.01]
- 27/06 • by means of parts of rubber or like materials (F16C 27/08 takes precedence; with sliding surfaces of rubber or synthetic rubber F16C 33/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 27/08 • primarily for axial load, e.g. for vertically-arranged shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 Bearings for parts moving only linearly** (F16C 32/06 takes precedence; incorporated in flexible shafts F16C 1/28) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 29/02 • Sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 29/04 • Ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 29/06 • • in which the rolling bodies circulate partly without carrying load [1, 2006.01]
- 29/08 • Arrangements for covering or protecting the ways [1, 2006.01]
- 29/10 • Arrangements for locking the bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 29/12 • Arrangements for adjusting play [1, 2006.01]
- 31/00 Bearings for parts which both rotate and move linearly** [1, 2006.01]
- 31/02 • Sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 31/04 • Ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 31/06 • • in which the rolling bodies circulate partly without carrying load [1, 2006.01]
- 32/00 Bearings not otherwise provided for** [1, 2006.01]
- 32/02 • Knife-edge bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 32/04 • using magnetic or electric supporting means [2, 2006.01]

- 32/06 • with moving member supported by a fluid cushion formed, at least to a large extent, otherwise than by movement of the shaft, e.g. hydrostatic air-cushion bearings [2, 2006.01]

#### **Details or accessories of bearings**

#### **33/00 Parts of bearings; Special methods for making bearings or parts thereof [1, 2006.01]**

- 33/02 • Parts of sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • • Brasses; Bushes; Linings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • • • Sliding surface mainly made of metal (F16C 33/24-F16C 33/28 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • • • Attachment of brasses, bushes, or linings to the bearing housing [1, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • • • • Construction relative to lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • • • Structural composition; Use of special materials or surface treatments, e.g. for rust-proofing [1, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • • • • Special methods of manufacture; Running-in [1, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • • • Sliding surface consisting mainly of graphite [1, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • • • Sliding surface consisting mainly of wood or fibrous material [1, 2006.01]
- 33/20 • • • Sliding surface consisting mainly of plastics (F16C 33/22-F16C 33/28 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/22 • • • Sliding surface consisting mainly of rubber or synthetic rubber (F16C 33/24-F16C 33/28 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/24 • • • with different areas of the sliding surface consisting of different materials [1, 2006.01]
- 33/26 • • • made from wire coils; made from a number of discs, rings, rods, or other members [1, 2006.01]
- 33/28 • • • with embedded reinforcements shaped as frames or meshed materials [1, 2006.01]
- 33/30 • Parts of ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/32 • • Balls [1, 2006.01]
- 33/34 • • Rollers; Needles [1, 2006.01]
- 33/36 • • • with bearing-surfaces other than cylindrical, e.g. tapered; with grooves in the bearing surfaces [1, 2006.01]
- 33/37 • • Loose spacing bodies [1, 2006.01]
- 33/372 • • • rigid [1, 2006.01]
- 33/374 • • • resilient [1, 2006.01]
- 33/38 • • Ball cages [1, 2006.01]
- 33/40 • • • for multiple rows of balls [1, 2006.01]
- 33/41 • • • comb-shaped [1, 2006.01]
- 33/42 • • • made from wire or sheet-metal strips (F16C 33/40, F16C 33/41 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/44 • • • Selection of substances (F16C 33/40, F16C 33/41 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/46 • • Cages for rollers or needles [1, 2006.01]
- 33/48 • • • for multiple rows of rollers or needles [1, 2006.01]
- 33/49 • • • comb-shaped [1, 2006.01]
- 33/50 • • • formed of interconnected members, e.g. chains [1, 2006.01]
- 33/51 • • • formed of unconnected members [1, 2006.01]

- 33/52 • • • with no part entering between, or touching, the bearing surfaces of the rollers (F16C 33/50 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/54 • • • made from wire, strips, or sheet metal (F16C 33/48, F16C 33/49 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/56 • • • Selection of substances (F16C 33/48, F16C 33/49 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/58 • • Raceways; Race rings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/60 • • • divided [1, 2006.01]
- 33/61 • • • • formed by wires [1, 2006.01]
- 33/62 • • • Selection of substances [1, 2006.01]
- 33/64 • • • Special methods of manufacture [1, 2006.01]
- 33/66 • • Special parts or details in view of lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 33/72 • Sealings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/74 • • of sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/76 • • of ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/78 • • • with a diaphragm, disc, or ring, with or without resilient members [1, 2006.01]
- 33/80 • • • Labyrinth sealings [1, 2006.01]
- 33/82 • • • Arrangements for electrostatic or magnetic action against dust or other particles [1, 2006.01]

#### **35/00 Rigid support of bearing units; Housings, e.g. caps, covers (F16C 23/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]**

- 35/02 • in the case of sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 35/04 • in the case of ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 35/06 • • Mounting of ball or roller bearings; Fixing them onto shaft or in housing [1, 2006.01]
- 35/063 • • • Fixing them on the shaft (with interposition of an element F16C 35/07) [3, 2006.01]
- 35/067 • • • Fixing them in a housing (with interposition of an element F16C 35/07) [3, 2006.01]
- 35/07 • • • Fixing them on the shaft or housing with interposition of an element [3, 2006.01]
- 35/073 • • • • between shaft and inner race ring [3, 2006.01]
- 35/077 • • • • between housing and outer race ring [3, 2006.01]
- 35/078 • • • using pressure fluid as mounting aid [3, 2006.01]
- 35/08 • for spindles [1, 2006.01]
- 35/10 • • with sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 35/12 • • with ball or roller bearings [1, 2006.01]

#### **37/00 Cooling of bearings [1, 2006.01]**

#### **39/00 Relieving load on bearings [1, 2006.01]**

- 39/02 • using mechanical means [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • using hydraulic or pneumatic means [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • using magnetic means [1, 2006.01]

#### **41/00 Other accessories for bearings [1, 2006.01]**

- 41/02 • Arrangements for equalising the load on a plurality of bearings or their elements [1, 2006.01]
- 41/04 • Preventing damage to bearings during storage or transport thereof or when otherwise out of use [1, 2006.01]

#### **43/00 Assembling bearings [1, 2006.01]**

- 43/02 • Assembling sliding-contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 43/04 • Assembling rolling contact bearings [1, 2006.01]
- 43/06 • • Placing rolling bodies in cages or bearings [1, 2006.01]

43/08 • • • by deforming the cages or the

races [1, 2006.01]

**F16D COUPLINGS FOR TRANSMITTING ROTATION** (gearing for conveying rotation F16H, e.g. fluid gearing F16H 39/00-F16H 47/00); **CLUTCHES** (dynamo-electric clutches H02K 49/00; clutches using electrostatic attraction H02N 13/00); **BRAKES** (electrodynamic brake systems for vehicles in general B60L 7/00; dynamo-electric brakes H02K 49/00) [2]

**Subclass index****COUPLINGS**

In general.....1/00  
 Yielding; impulse; slip.....3/00, 5/00, 7/00  
 With safety members.....9/00  
 Using a fluid as power-transmitting means.....31/00, 33/00, 39/00

**CLUTCHES**

Mechanically actuated  
 the members being in direct contact.....11/00, 13/00, 17/00  
 with separate members.....15/00  
 others; combinations.....19/00, 21/00  
 details.....23/00  
 Non-mechanically actuated  
 by fluid.....25/00, 29/00  
 magnetically actuated.....27/00, 29/00  
 electrically actuated.....28/00, 29/00  
 Using a fluid as power-transmitting means.....31/00-37/00  
 Freewheels, automatic.....41/00, 43/00, 45/00  
 Combinations.....45/00, 47/00  
 External control of clutches.....48/00

**FREEWHEELS OR FREEWHEEL CLUTCHES**.....41/00, 45/00

**BRAKES**

Characterised by their function.....49/00-55/00  
 Using resistance of liquid or air.....57/00  
 Automatic.....59/00  
 With means for making available for use the energy absorbed.....61/00  
 Others.....63/00  
 Details.....65/00, 69/00, 71/00  
 Monitoring working conditions.....66/00

**COMBINATIONS OF DIFFERENT DEVICES**.....47/00, 67/00

**Couplings**

1/00	<b>Couplings for rigidly connecting two coaxial shafts or other movable machine elements</b> (for attachment of cranks to their shafts F16C 3/10) [1, 2006.01]	1/076	• • • by clamping together two faces perpendicular to the axis of rotation, e.g. with bolted flanges [6, 2006.01]
1/02	• for connecting two abutting shafts or the like [1, 2006.01]	1/08	• • with clamping hub; with hub and longitudinal key [1, 2006.01]
1/027	• • non-disconnectable, e.g. involving gluing, welding or the like [6, 2006.01]	1/09	• • • with radial clamping due to axial loading of at least one pair of conical surfaces [5, 2006.01]
1/033	• • by clamping together two faces perpendicular to the axis of rotation, e.g. with bolted flanges [6, 2006.01]	1/091	• • • • and comprising a chamber including a tapered piston moved axially by fluid pressure to effect clamping [2006.01]
1/04	• • with clamping hub; with hub and longitudinal key [1, 2006.01]	1/092	• • • • the pair of conical mating surfaces being provided on the coupled hub and shaft [2006.01]
1/05	• • • with radial clamping due to axial loading of at least one pair of conical surfaces [5, 2006.01]	1/093	• • • • using one or more elastic or segmented conical rings forming at least one of the conical surfaces, the rings being expanded or contracted to effect clamping (F16D 1/091 takes precedence) [2006.01]
1/06	• for attachment of a member on a shaft or on a shaft-end (attachment of marine propellers on shafts B63H 23/34) [1, 2006.01]	1/094	• • • • • using one or more pairs of elastic or segmented rings with mutually mating conical surfaces, one of the mating rings being contracted and the other being expanded [2006.01]
1/064	• • non-disconnectable [6, 2006.01]	1/095	• • • • • with clamping effected by ring contraction only [2006.01]
1/068	• • • involving gluing, welding or the like [6, 2006.01]		
1/072	• • • involving plastic deformation (plastic welding F16D 1/068) [6, 2006.01]		

## F16D

- 1/096 • • • • • the ring or rings being located between the shaft and the hub **[2006.01]**
- 1/097 • • • • • with clamping effected by ring expansion only, e.g. with an expanded ring located between hub and shaft **[2006.01]**
- 1/10 • Quick-acting couplings in which the parts are connected by simply bringing them together axially **[1, 2006.01]**
- 1/104 • • having retaining means rotating with the coupling and acting only by friction **[6, 2006.01]**
- 1/108 • • having retaining means rotating with the coupling and acting by interengaging parts, i.e. positive coupling **[6, 2006.01]**
- 1/112 • • • the interengaging parts comprising torque-transmitting surfaces, e.g. bayonet joints **[6, 2006.01]**
- 1/116 • • • the interengaging parts including a continuous or interrupted circumferential groove in the surface of one of the coupling parts (circlips for retaining hubs on shafts F16B 21/18) **[6, 2006.01]**
- 1/12 • allowing adjustment of the parts about the axis (during motion F16D 3/10) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/00 Yielding couplings, i.e. with means permitting movement between the connected parts during the drive** (couplings disconnectable simply by axial movement F16D 1/10; slip couplings F16D 7/00; fluid couplings F16D 31/00-F16D 39/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/02 • adapted to specific functions **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/04 • • specially adapted to allow radial displacement, e.g. Oldham couplings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/06 • • specially adapted to allow axial displacement **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/08 • • Couplings for intersecting shafts, provided with intermediate bars bent in an angle corresponding with the angle of intersection **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/10 • • Couplings with means for varying the angular relationship of two coaxial shafts during motion **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/12 • • specially adapted for accumulation of energy to absorb shocks or vibration (by making use of fluid elements F16D 3/80) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/14 • • combined with a friction coupling for damping vibration or absorbing shock **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/16 • Universal joints in which flexibility is produced by means of pivots or sliding or rolling connecting parts **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/18 • • the coupling parts having slidably-interengaging teeth **[1, 2006.01]**
- Note(s) [4]**
- In this group, the following expression is used with the meaning indicated:
  - "coupling parts" means the driving member and the driven member of the coupling, which are mounted on, and rotate as a unit with, the shafts or their equivalents between which the coupling is placed. An intermediate member interconnecting these parts is regarded as such an equivalent.
- 3/19 • • • of resilient material or structure **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/20 • • one coupling part entering a sleeve of the other coupling part and connected thereto by sliding or rolling members (F16D 3/18, F16D 3/24 take precedence) **[1, 4, 5, 2006.01]**
- 3/202 • • • one coupling part having radially projecting pins, e.g. tripod joints **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/205 • • • • the pins extending radially outwardly from the coupling part **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/207 • • • • the pins extending radially inwardly from the coupling part **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/22 • • • the rolling members being balls, rollers, or the like, guided in grooves or sockets in both coupling parts **[1, 3, 5, 2006.01]**
- 3/221 • • • • the rolling members being located in sockets in one of the coupling parts **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/223 • • • • the rolling members being guided in grooves in both coupling parts **[5, 2006.01, 2011.01]**
- 3/2233 • • • • • where the track is made up of two curves with a point of inflexion in between, i.e. S-track joints **[2011.01]**
- 3/2237 • • • • • where the grooves are composed of radii and adjoining straight lines, i.e. undercut free [UF] type joints **[2011.01]**
- 3/224 • • • • • the groove centre-lines of each coupling part lying on a sphere **[5, 2006.01, 2011.01]**
- 3/2245 • • • • • where the groove centres are offset from the joint centre **[2011.01]**
- 3/226 • • • • • the groove centre-lines of each coupling part lying on a cylinder co-axial with the respective coupling part **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/227 • • • • • the joints being telescopic **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/229 • • • • • Prismatic coupling parts having each groove centre-line lying on planes parallel to the axis of the respective coupling part (F16D 3/224, F16D 3/226 take precedence) **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/24 • • comprising balls, rollers, or the like, between overlapping driving faces, e.g. cogs, on both coupling parts **[1, 3, 5, 2006.01]**
- 3/26 • • Hooke's joints or other joints with an equivalent intermediate member to which each coupling part is pivotally or slideably connected (F16D 3/18, F16D 3/20 take precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/27 • • • with two or more intermediate members pivotally or slidably connected together, e.g. tongue-and-slipper type joints **[5, 2006.01]**
- 3/28 • • • in which the interconnecting pivots include elastic members **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/30 • • • in which the coupling is specially adapted to constant velocity-ratio **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/32 • • • • by the provision of two intermediate members each having two relatively-perpendicular trunnions or bearings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/33 • • • • • with ball or roller bearings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/34 • • • • parts being connected by ridges, pins, balls, or the like guided in grooves or between cogs **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/36 • • • in which each pivot between the coupling parts and the intermediate member comprises a single ball **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/38 • • • with a single intermediate member with trunnions or bearings arranged on two axes perpendicular to one another (F16D 3/36 takes precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/40 • • • • with intermediate member provided with two pairs of outwardly-directed trunnions on intersecting axes **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/41 • • • • • with ball or roller bearings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/42 • • • • • with ring-shaped intermediate member provided with bearings or inwardly-directed trunnions **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/43 • • • • • with ball or roller bearings **[1, 2006.01]**

- 3/44 • • • the intermediate member being connected to the coupling parts by ridges, pins, balls, or the like guided in grooves or between cogs [1, 2006.01]
- 3/46 • • • • each coupling part embracing grooves or ridges on the intermediate member [1, 2006.01]
- 3/48 • • one coupling part having pins arranged parallel to the axis and entering holes in the other coupling part [1, 2006.01]
- 3/50 • with the coupling parts connected by one or more intermediate members (F16D 3/16 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/52 • • comprising a continuous strip, spring, or the like engaging the coupling parts at a number of places [1, 2006.01]
- 3/54 • • Couplings comprising a chain or strip surrounding two wheels arranged side by side and provided with teeth or the equivalent [1, 2006.01]
- 3/56 • • comprising elastic metal lamellae, elastic rods, or the like, e.g. arranged radially or parallel to the axis, the members being shear-loaded collectively by the total load [1, 2006.01]
- 3/58 • • • the intermediate members being made of rubber or like material [1, 2006.01]
- 3/60 • • comprising pushing or pulling links attached to both parts (F16D 3/64 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/62 • • • the links or their attachments being elastic [1, 2006.01]
- 3/64 • • comprising elastic elements arranged between substantially-radial walls of both coupling parts [1, 2006.01]
- 3/66 • • • the elements being metallic, e.g. in the form of coils [1, 2006.01]
- 3/68 • • • the elements being made of rubber or similar material [1, 2006.01]
- 3/70 • • comprising elastic elements arranged in holes in one coupling part and surrounding pins on the other coupling part [1, 2006.01]
- 3/72 • • with axially-spaced attachments to the coupling parts (F16D 3/56 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/74 • • • the intermediate member or members being made of rubber or other flexible material [1, 2006.01]
- 3/76 • • shaped as an elastic ring centered on the axis, surrounding a portion of one coupling part and surrounded by a sleeve of the other coupling part [1, 2006.01]
- 3/77 • • • the ring being metallic [1, 2006.01]
- 3/78 • • shaped as an elastic disc or flat ring, arranged perpendicular to the axis of the coupling parts, different sets of spots of the disc or ring being attached to each coupling part, e.g. Hardy couplings [1, 2006.01]
- 3/79 • • • the disc or ring being metallic [1, 2006.01]
- 3/80 • in which a fluid is used (fluid couplings allowing continuous slip F16D 31/00-F16D 35/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/82 • • with a coupling element in the form of a pneumatic tube [1, 2006.01]
- 3/84 • Shrouds, e.g. casings, covers; Sealing means specially adapted therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Impulse couplings, i.e. couplings that alternately accelerate and decelerate the driven member** (fluid couplings F16D 31/00-F16D 39/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/00 Slip couplings, e.g. slipping on overload, for absorbing shock** (combined with yielding shaft couplings F16D 3/14; fluid slip couplings F16D 31/00-F16D 35/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/02 • of the friction type [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • of the ratchet type [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • • with intermediate balls or rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • • • moving axially between engagement and disengagement [5, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • • • moving radially between engagement and disengagement [5, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Couplings with safety member for disconnecting** [1, 2006.01]
- 9/02 • by thermal means, e.g. melting member [6, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • by tensile breaking [6, 2006.01]
- 9/06 • by breaking due to shear stress [6, 2006.01]
- 9/08 • • over a single area encircling the axis of rotation, e.g. shear necks on shafts (F16D 9/10 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 9/10 • • having a part movable after disconnection so as to provide reconnection, e.g. advanceable shear pins [6, 2006.01]
- Clutches with mechanically-actuated clutching members; Synchronisation arrangements for clutches**
- 11/00 Clutches in which the members have interengaging parts** (arrangements for synchronisation F16D 23/02; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/02 • disengaged by a contact of a part mounted on the clutch with a stationarily-mounted member [1, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • • with clutching members movable only axially [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • • with clutching members movable otherwise than only axially, e.g. rotatable keys [1, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • actuated by moving a non-rotating part axially [1, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • • with clutching members movable only axially [1, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • • with clutching members movable otherwise than only axially [1, 2006.01]
- 11/14 • with clutching members movable only axially (F16D 11/02, F16D 11/08 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 11/16 • with clutching members movable otherwise than only axially (F16D 11/02, F16D 11/08 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 13/00 Friction clutches** (arrangements for synchronisation F16D 23/02; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • disengaged by the contact of a part mounted on the clutch with a stationarily-mounted member [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • with means for actuating or keeping engaged by a force derived at least partially from one of the shafts to be connected (automatic clutches F16D 43/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • with clutching members movable otherwise than only axially (F16D 13/08, F16D 13/12 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]

## F16D

- 13/08 • with a helical band or equivalent member, which may be built-up from linked parts, with more than one turn embracing a drum or the like, with or without an additional clutch actuating the end of the band (F16D 13/02 takes precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/10 • with clutching members co-operating with the periphery of a drum, a wheel-rim, or the like (F16D 13/02-F16D 13/08 take precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/12 • with an expansible band or coil co-operating with the inner surface of a drum or the like (F16D 13/02 takes precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/14 • with outwardly-movable clutching members co-operating with the inner surface of a drum or the like (F16D 13/02, F16D 13/06, F16D 13/12 take precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/16 • • shaped as radially-movable segments **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/18 • • shaped as linked or separately-pivoted segments **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/20 • with clutching members co-operating with both the periphery and the inner surface of a drum or wheel-rim **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/22 • with axially-movable clutching members **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/24 • • with conical friction surfaces **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/26 • • • in which the or each axially-movable member is pressed exclusively against an axially-located member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/28 • • • • with means for increasing the effective force between the actuating sleeve or equivalent member and the pressure member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/30 • • • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/32 • • • in which two or more axially-movable members are pressed from one side towards an axially-located member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/34 • • • • with means for increasing the effective force between the actuating sleeve or equivalent member and the pressure member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/36 • • • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/38 • • with flat clutching surfaces, e.g. discs **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/40 • • • in which the or each axially-movable member is pressed exclusively against an axially-located member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/42 • • • • with means for increasing the effective force between the actuating sleeve or equivalent member and the pressure member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/44 • • • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/46 • • • in which two axially-movable members, of which one is attached to the driving side and the other to the driven side, are pressed from one side towards an axially-located member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/48 • • • • with means for increasing the effective force between the actuating sleeve or equivalent member and the pressure member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/50 • • • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/52 • • • Clutches with multiple lamellae **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/54 • • • • with means for increasing the effective force between the actuating sleeve or equivalent member and the pressure member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/56 • • • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/58 • Details **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/60 • • Clutching elements (friction lining or attachment thereof F16D 69/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/62 • • • Clutch-bands; Clutch-shoes; Clutch-drums (brake-bands, brake-shoes, brake-drums F16D 65/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/64 • • • Clutch-plates; Clutch-lamellae (brake-plates, brake-lamellae F16D 65/12) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/66 • • • • of conical shape **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/68 • • • • Attachments of plates or lamellae to their supports **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/69 • • • • Arrangements for spreading lamellae in released state **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/70 • • Pressure members, e.g. pressure plates, for clutch-plates or lamellae; Guiding arrangements for pressure members **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/71 • • • in which the clutching pressure is produced by springs only **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/72 • • Features relating to cooling **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/74 • • Features relating to lubrication **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/75 • • Features relating to adjustment, e.g. slack adjusters **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/76 • specially adapted to incorporate with other transmission parts, i.e. at least one of the clutch parts also having another function, e.g. being the disc of a pulley **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/00 Clutches with wedging balls or rollers or with other wedgeable separate clutching members** (freewheels, freewheel clutches F16D 41/00; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 17/00 Clutches in which the drive is transmitted solely by virtue of the eccentricity of the contacting surfaces of clutch members which fit one around the other** (automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 19/00 Clutches with mechanically-actuated clutching members not otherwise provided for** (automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/00 Systems comprising a plurality of mechanically-actuated clutches** (for synchronisation F16D 23/04; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/02 • for interconnecting three or more shafts or other transmission members in different ways **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/04 • • with a shaft carrying a number of rotatable transmission members, e.g. gears, each of which can be connected to the shaft by a clutching member or members between the shaft and the hub of the transmission member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/06 • • at least two driving shafts or two driven shafts being concentric **[1, 2006.01]**
- 21/08 • Serially-arranged clutches interconnecting two shafts only when all the clutches are engaged (F16D 13/08, F16D 13/12 take precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 23/00 Details of mechanically-actuated clutches not specific for one distinct type; Synchronisation arrangements for clutches [1, 2006.01]**
- 23/02 • Arrangements for synchronisation (shape or mounting of interengaging parts of clutch members to facilitate engagement F16D 11/08) **[1, 2006.01]**

- 23/04 • • with an additional friction clutch [1, 2006.01]
- 23/06 • • • and a blocking mechanism preventing the engagement of the main clutch prior to synchronisation [1, 2006.01]
- 23/08 • • with a blocking mechanism that only releases the clutching member on synchronisation (in combination with an additional friction clutch F16D 23/06) [1, 2006.01]
- 23/10 • • automatically producing the engagement of the clutch when the clutch members are moving at the same speed; Indicating synchronisation [1, 2006.01]
- 23/12 • Mechanical clutch-actuating mechanisms arranged outside the clutch as such (specific for combined clutches F16D 21/00; mechanisms specific for synchronisation F16D 23/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 23/14 • • Clutch-actuating sleeves; Actuating members directly connected to clutch-actuating sleeves [1, 2006.01]
- 27/02 • • with electromagnets incorporated in the clutch, i.e. with collecting rings [1, 2006.01]
- 27/04 • • with axially-movable friction surfaces [1, 2006.01]
- 27/06 • • • with friction surfaces arranged within the flux [1, 2006.01]
- 27/07 • • • • Constructional features of clutch-plates or clutch-lamellae [1, 2006.01]
- 27/08 • • • with friction surfaces arranged externally to the flux [1, 2006.01]
- 27/09 • • and with interengaging jaws or gear-teeth [1, 2006.01]
- 27/10 • with an electromagnet not rotating with a clutching member, i.e. without collecting rings [1, 2006.01]
- 27/102 • • with radially movable clutching members (F16D 27/105 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 27/105 • • with a helical band or equivalent member co-operating with a cylindrical coupling surface [5, 2006.01]
- 27/108 • • with axially movable clutching members [5, 2006.01]
- 27/11 • • • with conical friction surfaces, e.g. cone clutches [5, 2006.01]
- 27/112 • • • with flat friction surfaces, e.g. discs [5, 2006.01]
- 27/115 • • • • with more than two discs, e.g. multiple lamellae [5, 2006.01]
- 27/118 • • with interengaging jaws or gear teeth [5, 2006.01]
- 27/12 • Clutch systems with a plurality of electromagnetically-actuated clutches [1, 2006.01]
- 27/14 • Details [1, 2006.01]

### **Clutches actuated non-mechanically [3]**

- 25/00 **Fluid-actuated clutches** (arrangements for synchronisation F16D 23/02; fluid clutches F16D 31/00-F16D 39/00; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/02 • with means for actuating or keeping engaged by a force derived at least partially from one of the shafts to be connected [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/04 • in which the fluid actuates an elastic clutching member, e.g. a diaphragm or a pneumatic tube (F16D 25/02 takes precedence; coupling using a pneumatic tube F16D 3/82) [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/06 • in which the fluid actuates a piston incorporated in the clutch (F16D 25/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/061 • • the clutch having interengaging clutch members [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/062 • • the clutch having friction surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/063 • • • with clutch members exclusively moving axially [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/0632 • • • • with conical friction surfaces, e.g. cone clutches [5, 2006.01]
  - 25/0635 • • • • with flat friction surfaces, e.g. discs [5, 2006.01]
  - 25/0638 • • • • with more than two discs, e.g. multiple lamellae [5, 2006.01]
  - 25/064 • • • • the friction surface being grooved [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/065 • • • with clutching members having a movement which has at least a radial component [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/08 • with fluid-actuated member not rotating with a clutching member (F16D 25/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/10 • Clutch systems with a plurality of fluid-actuated clutches [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/12 • Details not specific to one of the before-mentioned types [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/00 **Magnetically-actuated clutches; Control or electric circuits therefor** (arrangements for synchronisation F16D 23/02; clutches with magnetisable particles F16D 37/02; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; circuits for external control F16D 48/00) [1, 2, 2006.01]
  - 27/01 • with permanent magnets [1, 2006.01]
  - 28/00 **Electrically-actuated clutches** (arrangements for synchronisation F16D 23/02; clutches actuated directly by means of an electromagnet F16D 27/00; automatic clutches F16D 43/00-F16D 45/00; external control F16D 48/00) [6, 2006.01]
  - 29/00 **Clutches or systems of clutches involving both fluid and magnetic or both fluid and electric actuation [1, 6, 2006.01]**
- Couplings or clutches with a fluid or semifluid as power-transmitting means**
- 31/00 **Fluid couplings or clutches with pumping sets of the volumetric type, i.e. in the case of liquid passing a predetermined volume per revolution [1, 2006.01]**
  - 31/02 • using pumps with pistons or plungers working in cylinders [1, 2006.01]
  - 31/04 • using gear-pumps [1, 2006.01]
  - 31/06 • using pumps of types differing from those before-mentioned [1, 2006.01]
  - 31/08 • Control of slip [1, 2006.01]
  - 33/00 **Rotary fluid couplings or clutches of the hydrokinetic type [1, 2006.01]**
  - 33/02 • controlled by changing the flow of the liquid in the working circuit, while maintaining a completely filled working circuit [1, 2006.01]
  - 33/04 • • by altering the position of blades [1, 2006.01]
  - 33/06 • controlled by changing the amount of liquid in the working circuit [1, 2006.01]
  - 33/08 • • by devices incorporated in the fluid coupling, with or without remote control [1, 2006.01]
  - 33/10 • • • consisting of controllable supply and discharge openings [1, 2006.01]

## F16D

- 33/12 • • • • controlled automatically by self-actuated valves [1, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • • • consisting of shiftable or adjustable scoops [1, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • • by means arranged externally of the coupling or clutch [1, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • Details [1, 2006.01]
- 33/20 • • Shape of wheels, blades, or channels with respect to function [1, 2006.01]
- 35/00 **Fluid clutches in which the clutching is predominantly obtained by fluid adhesion** (F16D 37/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 35/02 • with rotary working chambers and rotary reservoirs, e.g. in one coupling part [5, 2006.01]
- 37/00 **Clutches in which the drive is transmitted through a medium consisting of small particles, e.g. centrifugally speed-responsive** [1, 2006.01]
- 37/02 • the particles being magnetisable [1, 2006.01]
- 39/00 **Combinations of couplings according to two or more of the groups F16D 31/00-F16D 37/00** [1, 2006.01]
- 41/14 • • the effective stroke of the pawl being adjustable [1, 2006.01]
- 41/16 • • the action being reversible [1, 2006.01]
- 41/18 • with non-hinged detent (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/20 • with expandable or contractable clamping ring or band (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/22 • with clutching ring or disc axially shifted as a result of lost motion between actuating members (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/24 • specially adapted for cycles [1, 2006.01]
- 41/26 • • with provision for altering the action [1, 2006.01]
- 41/28 • • with intermediate wedging coupling members [1, 2006.01]
- 41/30 • • with hinged pawl co-operating with teeth, cogs, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 41/32 • • with non-hinged detent [1, 2006.01]
- 41/34 • • with expandable or contractable clamping ring or band [1, 2006.01]
- 41/36 • • with clutching ring or disc axially shifted as a result of lost motion between actuating members [1, 2006.01]

### Freewheels or freewheel clutches; Automatic clutches

#### Note(s) [2009.01]

Groups F16D 31/00-F16D 39/00 take precedence over groups F16D 41/00-F16D 45/00.

- 41/00 **Freewheels or freewheel clutches** (cycle brakes controlled by back-peddalling B62L 5/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/02 • disengaged by contact of a part of or on the freewheel or freewheel clutch with a stationarily-mounted member [1, 2006.01]
- 41/04 • combined with a clutch for locking the driving and driven members (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/06 • with intermediate wedging coupling members between an inner and an outer surface (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 41/061 • • the intermediate members wedging by movement having an axial component [6, 2006.01]
- 41/063 • • the intermediate members wedging by moving along the inner and the outer surface without pivoting or rolling, e.g. sliding wedges (F16D 41/061 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 41/064 • • the intermediate members wedging by rolling and having a circular cross-section, e.g. balls (F16D 41/061 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 41/066 • • • all members having the same size and only one of the two surfaces being cylindrical [6, 2006.01]
- 41/067 • • • • and the members being distributed by a separate cage encircling the axis of rotation [6, 2006.01]
- 41/069 • • the intermediate members wedging by pivoting or rocking, e.g. sprags (F16D 41/061 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 41/07 • • • between two cylindrical surfaces [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 41/08 • • with provision for altering the freewheeling action [1, 2006.01]
- 41/10 • • • with self-actuated reversing [1, 2006.01]
- 41/12 • with hinged pawl co-operating with teeth, cogs, or the like (F16D 41/02, F16D 41/24 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 43/00 **Internally controlled automatic clutches** (freewheels, freewheel clutches F16D 41/00; external control of clutches F16D 48/00) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 43/02 • actuated entirely mechanically [1, 2006.01]
- 43/04 • • controlled by angular speed (F16D 43/24 takes precedence; clutches in which the drive is transmitted through a medium consisting of small particles F16D 37/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 43/06 • • • with centrifugal masses actuating axially a movable pressure ring or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 43/08 • • • • the pressure ring actuating friction plates, cones, or similar axially-movable friction surfaces [1, 2006.01]
- 43/09 • • • • • in which the carrier of the centrifugal masses can be stopped [1, 2006.01]
- 43/10 • • • • • the centrifugal masses acting directly on the pressure ring, no other actuating mechanism for the pressure ring being provided [1, 2006.01]
- 43/12 • • • • • the centrifugal masses acting on, or forming a part of, an actuating mechanism by which the pressure ring can also be actuated independently of the masses [1, 2006.01]
- 43/14 • • • with centrifugal masses actuating the clutching members directly in a direction which has at least a radial component; with centrifugal masses themselves being the clutching members [1, 2006.01]
- 43/16 • • • • with clutching members having interengaging parts [1, 2006.01]
- 43/18 • • • • with friction clutching members [1, 2006.01]
- 43/20 • • controlled by torque, e.g. overload-release clutches, slip-clutches with means by which torque varies the clutching pressure [1, 2006.01]
- 43/202 • • • of the ratchet type (slip couplings of the ratchet type F16D 7/04) [5, 2006.01]
- 43/204 • • • • with intermediate balls or rollers [5, 2006.01]
- 43/206 • • • • • moving axially between engagement and disengagement [5, 2006.01]
- 43/208 • • • • • moving radially between engagement and disengagement [5, 2006.01]

43/21	• • • with friction members [1, 2006.01]	49/14	• shaped as a fluid-filled flexible member actuated by variation of the fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]
43/22	• • controlled by both speed and torque [1, 2006.01]	49/16	• Brakes with two brake-blocks (self-tightening F16D 49/20) [1, 2006.01]
43/24	• • controlled by acceleration or deceleration of angular speed [1, 2006.01]	49/18	• Brakes with three or more brake-blocks (self-tightening F16D 49/20) [1, 2006.01]
43/25	• • controlled by thermo-responsive elements [1, 2006.01]	49/20	• Self-tightening brakes (with helical band or coil with more than one turn F16D 49/02) [1, 2006.01]
43/26	• • acting at definite angular position or disengaging after a definite number of rotations (actuating by means of stationary abutment F16D 11/02, F16D 13/02, F16D 15/00) [1, 2006.01]	49/22	• • with an auxiliary friction member initiating or increasing the action of the brake [1, 2006.01]
43/28	• actuated by fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]		
43/284	• • controlled by angular speed [1, 2006.01]	<b>51/00</b>	<b>Brakes with outwardly-movable braking members co-operating with the inner surface of a drum or the like [1, 2006.01]</b>
43/286	• • controlled by torque [1, 2006.01]	51/02	• shaped as one or more circumferential bands [1, 2006.01]
43/30	• Systems of a plurality of automatic clutches [1, 2006.01]	51/04	• • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
<b>45/00</b>	<b>Freewheels or freewheel clutches combined with automatic clutches [1, 2006.01]</b>	51/06	• • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
<hr/>			
<b>47/00</b>	<b>Systems of clutches, or clutches and couplings, comprising devices of types grouped under at least two of the following sets of groups: F16D 1/00-F16D 9/00; F16D 11/00-F16D 23/00; F16D 25/00-F16D 29/00; F16D 31/00-F16D 39/00; F16D 41/00-F16D 45/00 (freewheels combined with a clutch to lock the driving and driven members of the freewheel F16D 41/04, F16D 41/26) [1, 2006.01]</b>	51/08	• shaped as an expandible fluid-filled flexible member [1, 2006.01]
47/02	• of which at least one is a coupling [1, 2006.01]	51/10	• shaped as exclusively radially-movable brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
47/04	• of which at least one is a freewheel (F16D 47/02, F16D 47/06 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]	51/12	• • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
47/06	• of which at least one is a clutch with a fluid or a semifluid as power-transmitting means [1, 2006.01]	51/14	• • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
<b>48/00</b>	<b>External control of clutches [6, 2006.01]</b>	51/16	• shaped as brake-shoes pivoted on a fixed or nearly-fixed axis (self-tightening F16D 51/46) [1, 2006.01]
	<b>Note(s) [6]</b>	51/18	• • with two brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
	This group <u>does not cover</u> actuation, which is covered by groups F16D 11/00-F16D 29/00.	51/20	• • • extending in opposite directions from their pivots [1, 2006.01]
48/02	• Control by fluid pressure [6, 2006.01]	51/22	• • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
48/04	• • providing power assistance [6, 2006.01]	51/24	• • • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
48/06	• Control by electric or electronic means, e.g. of fluid pressure [6, 2006.01]	51/26	• • • both extending in the same direction from their pivots [1, 2006.01]
48/08	• • Regulating clutch take-up on starting [6, 2006.01]	51/28	• • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
48/10	• • Preventing unintentional or unsafe engagement [6, 2006.01]	51/30	• • • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
48/12	• • Control of torque transfer between driven axles [6, 2006.01]	51/32	• • with three or more brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
		51/34	• • • extending in opposite directions from their pivots [1, 2006.01]
<b>Brakes</b>		51/36	• • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
<b>49/00</b>	<b>Brakes with a braking member co-operating with the periphery of a drum, wheel-rim, or the like [1, 2006.01]</b>	51/38	• • • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
49/02	• shaped as a helical band or coil with more than one turn, with or without intensification of the braking force by the tension of the band or contracting member [1, 2006.01]	51/40	• • • all extending in the same direction from their pivots [1, 2006.01]
49/04	• • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]	51/42	• • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
49/06	• • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]	51/44	• • • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
49/08	• shaped as an encircling band extending over approximately 360° [1, 2006.01]	51/46	• Self-tightening brakes with pivoted brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
49/10	• • mechanically actuated (self-tightening F16D 49/20) [1, 2006.01]	51/48	• • with two linked or directly-interacting brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
49/12	• • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]	51/50	• • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/52	• • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/54	• • with three or more brake-shoes, at least two of them being linked or directly interacting [1, 2006.01]
		51/56	• • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/58	• • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/60	• • with wedging action of a brake-shoe, e.g. the shoe entering as a wedge between the brake-drum and a stationary part [1, 2006.01]
		51/62	• • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/64	• • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/66	• • an actuated brake-shoe being carried along and thereby engaging a member for actuating another brake-shoe [1, 2006.01]
		51/68	• • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
		51/70	• • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]

- 53/00 Brakes with braking members co-operating with both the periphery and the inner surface of a drum, wheel-rim, or the like [1, 2006.01]**
- 55/00 Brakes with substantially-radial braking surfaces pressed together in axial direction, e.g. disc brakes [1, 2006.01]**
- 55/02 • with axially-movable discs or pads pressed against axially-located rotating members [1, 2006.01]
- 55/04 • • by moving discs or pads away from one another against radial walls of drums or cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 55/06 • • • without self-tightening action [1, 2006.01]
- 55/08 • • • • Mechanically-actuated brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 55/10 • • • • Brakes actuated by a fluid-pressure device arranged in or on the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/12 • • • • • comprising an expansible fluid-filled flexible member coaxial with the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/14 • • • with self-tightening action, e.g. by means of coating helical surfaces or balls and inclined surfaces [1, 2006.01]
- 55/15 • • • • initiated by means of brake-bands or brake-shoes [1, 2006.01]
- 55/16 • • • • Mechanically-actuated brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 55/18 • • • • Brakes actuated by a fluid-pressure device arranged in or on the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/20 • • • • • comprising an expansible fluid-filled flexible member coaxial with the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/22 • • by clamping an axially-located rotating disc between movable braking members, e.g. movable brake discs or brake pads [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 55/224 • • • with a common actuating member for the braking members [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 55/225 • • • • the braking members being brake pads [5, 2006.01]
- 55/2255 • • • • • in which the common actuating member is pivoted [5, 2006.01]
- 55/226 • • • • • in which the common actuating member is moved axially [5, 2006.01]
- 55/2265 • • • • • the axial movement being guided by one or more pins [5, 2006.01]
- 55/227 • • • • • • by two pins [5, 2006.01]
- 55/228 • • • with a separate actuating member for each side [1, 2006.01]
- 55/24 • with a plurality of axially-movable discs, lamellae, or pads, pressed from one side towards an axially-located member [1, 2006.01]
- 55/26 • • without self-tightening action [1, 2006.01]
- 55/28 • • • Brakes with only one rotating disc [1, 2006.01]
- 55/30 • • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
- 55/31 • • • • • by means of an intermediate leverage [1, 2006.01]
- 55/32 • • • • actuated by a fluid-pressure device arranged in or on the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/33 • • • • • by means of an intermediate leverage [1, 2006.01]
- 55/34 • • • • • comprising an expansible fluid-filled flexible member coaxial with the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/36 • • • Brakes with a plurality of rotating discs all lying side by side [1, 2006.01]
- 55/38 • • • • mechanically actuated [1, 2006.01]
- 55/39 • • • • • by means of an intermediate leverage [1, 2006.01]
- 55/40 • • • • actuated by a fluid-pressure device arranged in or on the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/41 • • • • • by means of an intermediate leverage [1, 2006.01]
- 55/42 • • • • • comprising an expansible fluid-filled flexible member coaxial with the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 55/44 • • • with the rotating part consisting of both central plates and ring-shaped plates arranged concentrically around the central plates [1, 2006.01]
- 55/46 • • with self-tightening action [1, 2006.01]
- 55/48 • • • with discs or pads having a small free angular travel relative to their support, which produces the self-tightening action [1, 2006.01]
- 55/50 • • • with auxiliary friction members, which may be of different type, producing the self-tightening action [1, 2006.01]
- 57/00 Liquid-resistance brakes; Air-resistance brakes [1, 2006.01]**
- 57/02 • with blades or like members braked by the fluid [1, 2006.01]
- 57/04 • with blades causing a directed flow, e.g. Föttinger type [1, 2006.01]
- 57/06 • comprising a pump circulating fluid, braking being effected by throttling of the circulation [1, 2006.01]
- 59/00 Self-acting brakes, e.g. coming into operation at a predetermined speed [1, 2006.01]**
- 59/02 • spring-loaded and adapted to be released by mechanical, fluid, or electromagnetic means [1, 2006.01]
- 61/00 Brakes with means for making the energy absorbed available for use (F16D 57/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]**
- 63/00 Brakes not otherwise provided for; Brakes combining more than one of the types of groups F16D 49/00-F16D 61/00 (brakes with auxiliary members for self-tightening F16D 49/22, F16D 51/66, F16D 55/50) [1, 2006.01]**
- 65/00 Parts or details of brakes [1, 2006.01]**
- 65/02 • Braking members; Mounting thereof (friction linings or attachment thereof F16D 69/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 65/04 • • Bands, shoes or pads; Pivots or supporting members therefor [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 65/06 • • • for externally-engaging brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/08 • • • for internally-engaging brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/09 • • • • Pivots or supporting members therefor [2, 2006.01]
- 65/092 • • • for axially-engaging brakes, e.g. disc brakes [5, 2006.01]
- 65/095 • • • • Pivots or supporting members therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 65/097 • • • • • Resilient means interposed between pads and supporting members [5, 2006.01]
- 65/10 • • Drums for externally- or internally-engaging brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/12 • • Discs; Drums for disc brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/14 • Actuating mechanisms for brakes; Means for initiating operation at a predetermined position (brake control systems, parts thereof B60T) [1, 2006.01]

**Note(s) [2012.01]**

In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of groups F16D 121/00-F16D 131/00 relating to actuators.

- 65/16 • • arranged in or on the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 65/18 • • • adapted for drawing members together [1, 2006.01]
- 65/22 • • • adapted for pressing members apart [1, 2006.01]
- 65/28 • • arranged apart from the brake [1, 2006.01]
- 65/38 • Slack adjusters [1, 2006.01]
- 65/40 • • mechanical [1, 2006.01]
- 65/42 • • • non-automatic [1, 2006.01]
- 65/44 • • • • by means of direct linear adjustment (F16D 65/46, F16D 65/48 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 65/46 • • • • with screw-thread and nut [1, 2006.01]
- 65/48 • • • • with eccentric or helical body [1, 2006.01]
- 65/50 • • • • for angular adjustment of two concentric parts of the brake control system [1, 2006.01]
- 65/52 • • • self-acting in one direction for adjusting excessive play [1, 2006.01]
- 65/54 • • • • by means of direct linear adjustment (F16D 65/56, F16D 65/58 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 65/56 • • • • with screw-thread and nut [1, 2006.01]
- 65/58 • • • • with eccentric or helical body [1, 2006.01]
- 65/60 • • • • for angular adjustment of two concentric parts of the brake control system [1, 2006.01]
- 65/62 • • • self-acting in both directions for adjusting excessive and insufficient play [1, 2006.01]
- 65/64 • • • • by means of direct linear adjustment (F16D 65/66, F16D 65/68 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 65/66 • • • • with screw-thread and nut [1, 2006.01]
- 65/68 • • • • with eccentric or helical body [1, 2006.01]
- 65/70 • • • • for angular adjustment of two concentric parts of the brake control system [1, 2006.01]
- 65/72 • • hydraulic [1, 2006.01]
- 65/74 • • • self-acting in one direction [1, 2006.01]
- 65/76 • • • self-acting in both directions [1, 2006.01]
- 65/78 • Features relating to cooling [1, 2006.01]
- 65/80 • • for externally-engaging brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/807 • • • with open cooling system, e.g. cooled by air [2, 2006.01]
- 65/813 • • • with closed cooling system [2, 2006.01]
- 65/82 • • for internally-engaging brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/827 • • • with open cooling system, e.g. cooled by air [2, 2006.01]
- 65/833 • • • with closed cooling system [2, 2006.01]
- 65/84 • • for disc brakes [1, 2006.01]
- 65/847 • • • with open cooling system, e.g. cooled by air [2, 2006.01]
- 65/853 • • • with closed cooling system [2, 2006.01]
- 66/00 Arrangements for monitoring working conditions of brakes, e.g. wear or temperature [1, 2006.01]**
- 66/02 • Apparatus for indicating wear [1, 2006.01]

- 67/00 Combinations of couplings and brakes; Combinations of clutches and brakes** (F16D 71/00 takes precedence; conjoint control of brake systems and driveline clutches in vehicles B60W 10/02, B60W 10/18) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 67/02 • Clutch-brake combinations [1, 2006.01]
- 67/04 • • fluid actuated [1, 2006.01]
- 67/06 • • electromagnetically actuated [1, 2006.01]
- 69/00 Friction linings; Attachment thereof; Selection of coating friction substances or surfaces** (braking members F16D 65/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 69/02 • Composition of linings [1, 2006.01]
- 69/04 • Attachment of linings [1, 2006.01]
- 71/00 Mechanisms for bringing members to rest in a predetermined position** (combined with, or controlling, clutches F16D 43/26; means for initiating operation of brakes at a predetermined position F16D 65/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 71/02 • comprising auxiliary means for producing the final movement [1, 2006.01]
- 71/04 • providing for selection between a plurality of positions (F16D 71/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]

**Indexing scheme associated with groups F16D 65/14-F16D 65/28 relating to actuators [2012.01]**

- 121/00 Type of actuator operation force [2012.01]**
- 121/02 • Fluid pressure [2012.01]
- 121/04 • • acting on a piston-type actuator, e.g. for liquid pressure [2012.01]
- 121/06 • • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/08 • • acting on a membrane-type actuator, e.g. for gas pressure [2012.01]
- 121/10 • • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/12 • • for releasing a normally applied brake, the type of actuator being irrelevant or not provided for in groups F16D 121/04-F16D 121/10 [2012.01]
- 121/14 • Mechanical [2012.01]
- 121/16 • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/18 • Electric or magnetic [2012.01]
- 121/20 • • using electromagnets [2012.01]
- 121/22 • • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/24 • • using motors [2012.01]
- 121/26 • • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/28 • • using electrostrictive or magnetostrictive elements, e.g. piezoelectric elements [2012.01]
- 121/30 • • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 121/32 • using shape memory elements [2012.01]
- 121/34 • • for releasing a normally applied brake [2012.01]
- 123/00 Multiple operation forces [2012.01]**
- Note(s) [2012.01]**
- When indexing in this group, each kind of operation force must be indexed in the appropriate subgroups of group F16D 121/00.
- 125/00 Components of actuators [2012.01]**
- 125/02 • Fluid-pressure mechanisms [2012.01]
- 125/04 • • Cylinders [2012.01]

## F16D

- 125/06 • • Pistons [2012.01]
- 125/08 • • Seals, e.g. piston seals [2012.01]
- 125/10 • • Plural pistons interacting by fluid pressure, e.g. hydraulic force amplifiers using different sized pistons [2012.01]
- 125/12 • • Membrane or diaphragm types [2012.01]
- 125/14 • • Fluid-filled flexible members, e.g. enclosed air bladders [2012.01]
- 125/16 • • Devices for bleeding or filling [2012.01]
- 125/18 • Mechanical mechanisms [2012.01]
- 125/20 • • converting rotation to linear movement or vice-versa [2012.01]
- 125/22 • • • acting transversely to the axis of rotation [2012.01]
- 125/24 • • • Rack-and-pinion [2012.01]
- 125/26 • • • Cranks [2012.01]
- 125/28 • • • Cams; Levers with cams [2012.01]
- 125/30 • • • • acting on two or more cam followers, e.g. S-cams [2012.01]
- 125/32 • • • • acting on one cam follower [2012.01]
- 125/34 • • • acting in the direction of the axis of rotation [2012.01]
- 125/36 • • • • Helical cams; Ball-rotating ramps [2012.01]
- 125/38 • • • • with plural cam or ball-ramp mechanisms arranged concentrically with the brake rotor axis [2012.01]
- 125/40 • • • • Screw-and-nut [2012.01]
- 125/42 • • • • Rack-and-worm gears [2012.01]
- 125/44 • • transmitting rotation [2012.01]
- 125/46 • • • Rotating members in mutual engagement [2012.01]
- 125/48 • • • • with parallel stationary axes, e.g. spur gears [2012.01]
- 125/50 • • • • with parallel non-stationary axes, e.g. planetary gearing [2012.01]
- 125/52 • • • • with non-parallel stationary axes, e.g. worm or bevel gears [2012.01]
- 125/54 • • • • with non-parallel non-stationary axes [2012.01]
- 125/56 • • • Shafts for transmitting torque directly [2012.01]
- 125/58 • • transmitting linear movement [2012.01]
- 125/60 • • • Cables or chains, e.g. Bowden cables [2012.01]
- 125/62 • • • • Fixing arrangements therefor, e.g. cable end attachments [2012.01]
- 125/64 • • • Levers [2012.01]
- 125/66 • • • Wedges [2012.01]
- 125/68 • • • Lever-link mechanisms, e.g. toggles with change of force ratio [2012.01]
- 125/70 • • • Rods [2012.01]
- 127/00 **Auxiliary mechanisms [2012.01]**
- 127/02 • Release mechanisms [2012.01]
- 127/04 • • for manual operation [2012.01]
- 127/06 • Locking mechanisms, e.g. acting on actuators, on release mechanisms or on force transmission mechanisms [2012.01]
- 127/08 • Self-amplifying or de-amplifying mechanisms [2012.01]
- 127/10 • • having wedging elements [2012.01]
- 127/12 • • having additional frictional elements [2012.01]
- 129/00 **Type of operation source for auxiliary mechanisms [2012.01]**
- 129/02 • Fluid-pressure [2012.01]
- 129/04 • Mechanical [2012.01]
- 129/06 • Electric or magnetic [2012.01]
- 129/08 • • Electromagnets [2012.01]
- 129/10 • • Motors [2012.01]
- 129/12 • • Electrostrictive or magnetostrictive elements, e.g. piezoelectric [2012.01]
- 129/14 • Shape memory elements [2012.01]
- 131/00 **Overall arrangement of the actuators or their elements, e.g. modular construction [2012.01]**
- 131/02 • of the actuator controllers [2012.01]

## F16F SPRINGS; SHOCK-ABSORBERS; MEANS FOR DAMPING VIBRATION

### Note(s) [5]

1. This subclass covers:
  - springs, shock-absorbers or vibration-dampers;
  - their arrangement in, or adaptation for, particular apparatus, if not provided for in the subclasses covering said apparatus.
2. This subclass does not cover the arrangement or adaptation of springs, shock-absorbers or vibration-dampers in, or for, particular apparatus, if provided for in the subclasses concerning the said apparatus, e.g.
  - A47C 23/00-A47C 27/00.....Spring mattresses
  - A63C 5/075.....Vibration dampers in skis
  - B60G..... Vehicle suspensions
  - B60R 19/24.....Mounting of bumpers on vehicles
  - B61F.....Rail vehicle suspensions
  - B61G 11/00.....Buffers for railway or tramway vehicles
  - B62D 21/15..... Vehicle chassis frames having impact absorbing means
  - B62J 1/02.....Resiliently mounted saddles on cycles
  - B62K 21/08.....Steering dampers
  - B63H 1/15.....Marine propellers having vibration-damping means
  - B63H 21/30.....Anti-vibration mounting of marine propulsion plant in ships
  - B64C 25/58.....Arrangement of shock-absorbers or springs in aeroplane alighting gear
  - B65D 81/02.....Containers, packing elements or packages with shock-absorbing means
  - D06F 37/20.....Resilient mountings in washing machines
  - D06F 49/06.....Resilient mountings in domestic spin-dryers
  - F03G 1/00.....Spring motors
  - F21V 15/04.....Resilient mounting of lighting devices

F41A 25/00.....	Gun cradles to permit recoil
F41B 5/20.....	Vibration dampers for archery bows
G01D 11/00.....	Indicating or recording in connection with measuring
G01G 21/10.....	Weighing apparatus, e.g. arrangement of shock-absorbers in weighing apparatus
G04B.....	Clocks, watches
G12B 3/08.....	Damping of movements in instruments
G21C 7/20.....	Disposition of shock-absorbing devices for displaceable control elements in nuclear reactors.

### Subclass index

#### SPRINGS

Friction type; fluid type; magnetic type.....	1/00, 3/00, 5/00, 9/00, 6/00
VIBRATION-DAMPERS OR SHOCK-ABSORBERS	
Friction type; fluid type.....	7/00, 11/00, 9/00, 11/00
UNITS COMBINING SPRINGS AND VIBRATION-DAMPERS OR SHOCK-ABSORBERS.....	13/00
SUPPRESSION OF VIBRATION, BALANCING.....	15/00

<b>1/00</b>	<b>Springs</b> (working with fluid F16F 5/00, F16F 9/00) [1, 2006.01]	1/371	• • characterised by inserts or auxiliary extension elements, e.g. for rigidification (F16F 1/366, F16F 1/387 take precedence) [6, 2006.01]
1/02	• made of steel or other material having low internal friction (F16F 1/36 takes precedence); Wound, torsion, leaf, cup, ring or the like springs, the material of the spring not being relevant [1, 6, 2006.01]	1/373	• • characterised by having a particular shape [6, 2006.01]
1/04	• • Wound springs [1, 2006.01]	1/374	• • • having a spherical or the like shape [6, 2006.01]
1/06	• • • with turns lying in cylindrical surfaces [1, 2006.01]	1/376	• • • having projections, studs, serrations or the like on at least one surface (F16F 1/387 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
1/08	• • • with turns lying in mainly conical surfaces [1, 2006.01]	1/377	• • • having holes or openings (F16F 1/387 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
1/10	• • • Spiral springs with turns lying substantially in plane surfaces [1, 2006.01]	1/379	• • characterised by arrangements for controlling the spring temperature, e.g. by cooling [6, 2006.01]
1/12	• • • Attachments or mountings [1, 2006.01]	1/38	• • with a sleeve of elastic material between a rigid outer sleeve and a rigid inner sleeve or pin [1, 2006.01]
1/13	• • • • comprising inserts or spacers between the windings for changing the mechanical or physical characteristics of the spring [6, 2006.01]	1/387	• • • comprising means for modifying the rigidity in particular directions [6, 2006.01]
1/14	• • Torsion springs consisting of bars or tubes [1, 2006.01]	1/393	• • • with spherical or conical sleeves [6, 2006.01]
1/16	• • • Attachments or mountings [1, 2006.01]	1/40	• • consisting of a stack of similar elements separated by non-elastic intermediate layers [1, 2006.01]
1/18	• • Leaf springs [1, 2006.01]	1/41	• • the spring consisting of generally conically arranged elements [6, 2006.01]
1/20	• • • with layers, e.g. anti-friction layers, or with rollers between the leaves [1, 2006.01]	1/42	• • characterised by the mode of stressing [1, 2006.01]
1/22	• • • with means for modifying the spring characteristic [1, 2006.01]	1/44	• • • loaded mainly in compression [1, 2006.01]
1/24	• • • Lubrication; Covers, e.g. for retaining lubricant [1, 2006.01]	1/46	• • • loaded mainly in tension [1, 2006.01]
1/26	• • • Attachments or mountings (B60G 11/10 takes precedence) [1, 5, 2006.01]	1/48	• • • loaded mainly in torsion [1, 2006.01]
1/28	• • • • comprising cylindrical metal pins pivoted in close-fitting sleeves [1, 2006.01]	1/50	• • • loaded mainly in shear [1, 2006.01]
1/30	• • • • comprising intermediate pieces made of rubber or similar elastic material [1, 2006.01]	1/52	• • • loaded in combined stresses [1, 2006.01]
1/32	• • Cup springs; Dished disc springs (diaphragms F16J 3/00) [1, 2006.01]	1/54	• • • • loaded in compression and shear [1, 2006.01]
1/34	• • Ring springs, i.e. annular bodies deformed radially due to axial load [1, 2006.01]	<b>3/00</b>	<b>Spring units consisting of several springs, e.g. for obtaining a desired spring characteristic</b> (including fluid springs F16F 5/00, F16F 13/00) [1, 2006.01]
1/36	• made of plastics, e.g. rubber; made of material having high internal friction [1, 2006.01]	3/02	• with springs made of steel or of other material having low internal friction [1, 2006.01]
1/362	• • made of steel wool or compressed hair [6, 2006.01]	3/04	• • composed only of wound springs [1, 2006.01]
1/364	• • made of cork, wood or the like material [6, 2006.01]	3/06	• • • of which some are placed around others in such a way that they damp each other by mutual friction [1, 2006.01]
1/366	• • made of fibre reinforced plastics [6, 2006.01]	3/07	• • combined with chambers filled with gas or liquid [1, 2006.01]
1/368	• • • Leaf springs [6, 2006.01]	3/08	• with springs made of a material having high internal friction, e.g. rubber [1, 2006.01]
1/37	• • of foam-like material, e.g. sponge rubber [1, 2006.01]		

- 3/087 • • Units comprising several springs made of plastics or the like material (F16F 1/40 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 3/093 • • • the springs being of different materials, e.g. having different types of rubber [6, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • • combined with springs made of steel or other material having low internal friction [1, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • • • the steel spring being in contact with the rubber spring, e.g. being embedded in it [6, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Liquid springs in which the liquid works as a spring by compression, e.g. combined with throttling action; Combinations of devices including liquid springs [1, 2006.01]**
- 6/00 Magnetic springs; Fluid magnetic springs [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/00 Vibration-dampers; Shock-absorbers (using fluid F16F 5/00, F16F 9/00; specific for rotary systems F16F 15/10) [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/01 • using friction between loose particles, e.g. sand [6, 2006.01]
- 7/02 • with relatively-rotatable friction surfaces that are pressed together (F16F 7/01 takes precedence; one of the members being a spring F16F 13/02) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • • in the direction of the axis of rotation [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • • in a direction perpendicular or inclined to the axis of rotation [1, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • with friction surfaces rectilinearly movable along each other (F16F 7/01 takes precedence) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 7/09 • • in dampers of the cylinder-and-piston type [6, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • using inertia effect [1, 2006.01]
- 7/104 • • the inertia member being resiliently mounted [6, 2006.01]
- 7/108 • • • on plastics springs [6, 2006.01]
- 7/112 • • • on fluid springs [6, 2006.01]
- 7/116 • • • on metal springs [6, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • using plastic deformation of members [1, 2006.01]
- 7/14 • of cable-support type, i.e. frictionally-engaged loop-forming cables [1, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Springs, vibration-dampers, shock-absorbers, or similarly-constructed movement-dampers using a fluid or the equivalent as damping medium (F16F 5/00 takes precedence; connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00; door-operating appliances with fluid braking systems E05F) [1, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • using gas only [1, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • • in a chamber with a flexible wall [1, 2006.01]
- 9/05 • • • the flexible wall being of the rolling diaphragm type [5, 2006.01]
- 9/06 • using both gas and liquid [1, 2006.01]
- 9/08 • • in a chamber with a flexible wall [1, 2006.01]
- 9/084 • • • comprising a gas spring contained within a flexible wall, the wall not being in contact with the damping fluid, i.e. mounted externally on the damper cylinder [6, 2006.01]
- 9/088 • • • comprising a gas spring with a flexible wall provided within the cylinder on the piston rod of a monotubular damper or within the inner tube of a bitubular damper [6, 2006.01]
- 9/092 • • • comprising a gas spring with a flexible wall provided between the tubes of a bitubular damper [6, 2006.01]
- 9/096 • • • comprising a hydropneumatic accumulator of the membrane type provided on the upper or the lower end of a damper or separately from or laterally on the damper [6, 2006.01]
- 9/10 • using liquid only; using a fluid of which the nature is immaterial [1, 2006.01]
- 9/12 • • Devices with one or more rotary vanes turning in the fluid, any throttling effect being immaterial [1, 2006.01]
- 9/14 • • Devices with one or more members, e.g. pistons, vanes, moving to and fro in chambers and using throttling effect [1, 2006.01]
- 9/16 • • • involving only straight-line movement of the effective parts [1, 2006.01]
- 9/18 • • • • with a closed cylinder and a piston separating two or more working spaces therein [1, 2006.01]
- 9/19 • • • • • with a single cylinder [1, 2006.01]
- 9/20 • • • • • with the piston-rod extending through both ends of the cylinder [1, 2006.01]
- 9/22 • • • • • with one or more cylinders, each having a single working space closed by a piston or plunger [1, 2006.01]
- 9/24 • • • • • with a single cylinder and a single piston or plunger [1, 2006.01]
- 9/26 • • • • • with two cylinders in line and with the two pistons or plungers connected together [1, 2006.01]
- 9/28 • • • • • with two parallel cylinders and with the two pistons or plungers connected together [1, 2006.01]
- 9/30 • with solid or semi-solid material, e.g. pasty masses, as damping medium [1, 2006.01]
- 9/32 • Details [1, 2006.01]
- 9/34 • • Special valve constructions (valves in general F16K); Shape or construction of throttling passages [1, 2006.01]
- 9/342 • • • Throttling passages operating with metering pins [1, 2006.01]
- 9/344 • • • Vortex flow passages [6, 2006.01]
- 9/346 • • • Throttling passages in the form of slots arranged in cylinder walls [1, 2006.01]
- 9/348 • • • Throttling passages in the form of annular discs operating in opposite directions [1, 2006.01]
- 9/36 • • Special sealings, including sealings or guides for piston-rods [1, 2006.01]
- 9/38 • • Covers for protection or appearance [1, 2006.01]
- 9/40 • • Arrangements for preventing froth [1, 2006.01]
- 9/42 • • Cooling arrangements [1, 2006.01]
- 9/43 • • Filling arrangements, e.g. for supply of gas [1, 2006.01]
- 9/44 • • Means on or in the damper for manual or non-automatic adjustment; such means combined with temperature correction (F16F 9/53, F16F 9/56 take precedence; temperature correction only F16F 9/52) [1, 5, 6, 2006.01]
- 9/46 • • • allowing control from a distance [1, 2006.01]
- 9/48 • • Arrangements for providing different damping effects at different parts of the stroke (F16F 9/53, F16F 9/56 take precedence) [1, 5, 6, 2006.01]
- 9/49 • • • Stops limiting fluid passage, e.g. hydraulic stops [1, 2006.01]

- 9/50 • • Special means providing automatic damping adjustment (F16F 9/53, F16F 9/56 take precedence) [1, 5, 6, 2006.01]
- 9/504 • • • Inertia-sensitive means [6, 2006.01]
- 9/508 • • • Means responsive to the velocity of movement of the piston [6, 2006.01]
- 9/512 • • • Means responsive to load action on the damper or fluid pressure in the damper [6, 2006.01]
- 9/516 • • • resulting in the damping effects during contraction being different from the damping effects during extension [6, 2006.01]
- 9/52 • • • in case of change of temperature (combined with external adjustment F16F 9/44) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/53 • • Means for adjusting damping characteristics by varying fluid viscosity, e.g. electromagnetically [5, 2006.01]
- 9/54 • • Arrangements for attachment [1, 2006.01]
- 9/56 • • Means for adjusting the length of, or for locking, the spring or damper, e.g. at the end of the stroke [6, 2006.01]
- 9/58 • • Stroke limiting stops, e.g. arranged on the piston rod outside the cylinder (F16F 9/49 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Vibration-dampers or shock-absorbers working with both friction and a damping fluid [1, 2006.01]**
- 13/00 Units comprising springs of the non-fluid type as well as vibration-dampers, shock-absorbers, or fluid springs (F16F 5/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]**
- 13/02 • damping by frictional contact between the spring and braking means (frictionally coating wound springs F16F 3/06) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • comprising both a plastics spring and a damper, e.g. a friction damper [6, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • the damper being a fluid damper, e.g. the plastics spring not forming a part of the wall of the fluid chamber of the damper (F16F 13/26 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • • the plastics spring forming at least a part of the wall of the fluid chamber of the damper (F16F 13/20-F16F 13/24 take precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • • • • the wall being at least in part formed by a flexible membrane or the like (F16F 13/12-F16F 13/18 take precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • • • • Single chamber dampers (F16F 13/14 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • • • • Units of the bushing type [6, 2006.01]
- 13/16 • • • • specially adapted for receiving axial loads [6, 2006.01]
- 13/18 • • • • characterised by the location or the shape of the equilibration chamber, e.g. the equilibration chamber surrounding the plastics spring or being annular (F16F 13/14 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/20 • • • characterised by comprising also a pneumatic spring (F16F 13/22 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/22 • • • characterised by comprising also a dynamic damper (dampers using inertia effect per se F16F 7/10) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/24 • • • the central part of the unit being supported by one element and both extremities of the unit being supported by a single other element, i.e. double acting mounting [6, 2006.01]
- 13/26 • • characterised by adjusting or regulating devices responsive to exterior conditions [6, 2006.01]
- 13/28 • • • specially adapted for units of the bushing type (F16F 13/30 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 13/30 • • • comprising means for varying fluid viscosity, e.g. of magnetic or electrorheological fluids [6, 2006.01]
- 15/00 Suppression of vibrations in systems (vehicle seat suspension devices B60N 2/50); Means or arrangements for avoiding or reducing out-of-balance forces, e.g. due to motion (testing static or dynamic balance of machines or structures G01M 1/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • Suppression of vibrations of non-rotating, e.g. reciprocating, systems; Suppression of vibrations of rotating systems by use of members not moving with the rotating system (layered products B32B; suppression of vibration in ships B63) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/023 • • using fluid means [6, 2006.01]
- 15/027 • • • comprising control arrangements [6, 2006.01]
- 15/03 • • using electromagnetic means (F16F 9/53 takes precedence) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • • using elastic means (single elements or their attachment F16F 1/00-F16F 13/00) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • • • with metal springs (with rubber springs also F16F 15/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/067 • • • using only wound springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/073 • • • using only leaf springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/08 • • • with rubber springs [1, 2006.01]
- 15/10 • Suppression of vibrations in rotating systems by making use of members moving with the system (by balancing F16F 15/22; with flywheels acting variably or intermittently F16H) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/12 • • using elastic members or friction-damping members, e.g. between a rotating shaft and a gyratory mass mounted thereon (F16F 15/16 takes precedence) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 15/121 • • • using springs as elastic members, e.g. metallic springs (F16F 15/131 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 15/123 • • • • Wound springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/124 • • • • Plastics springs, e.g. made of rubber (F16F 15/123 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 15/126 • • • • • consisting of at least one annular element surrounding the axis of rotation [6, 2006.01]
- 15/127 • • • • using plastics springs combined with other types of springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/129 • • • characterised by friction-damping means (F16F 15/131 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 15/131 • • • the rotating system comprising two or more gyratory masses [6, 2006.01]
- 15/133 • • • using springs as elastic members, e.g. metallic springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/134 • • • • Wound springs [6, 2006.01]
- 15/136 • • • • Plastics springs, e.g. made of rubber (F16F 15/134 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 15/137 • • • • • the elastic members consisting of two or more springs of different types [6, 2006.01]
- 15/139 • • • • characterised by friction-damping means [6, 2006.01]
- 15/14 • • using freely-swinging masses rotating with the system [1, 2006.01]

**F16F**

- 15/16 • • using a fluid (devices connecting input and output members F16D) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/167 • • • having an inertia member, e.g. ring [6, 2006.01]
- 15/173 • • • • provided within a closed housing [6, 2006.01]
- 15/18 • • using electric means (dynamo-electric devices H02K) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/20 • Suppression of vibrations of rotating systems by favourable grouping or relative arrangement of the moving members of the system or systems [1, 2006.01]
- 15/22 • Compensation of inertia forces [1, 2006.01]
- 15/24 • • of crankshaft systems by particular disposition of cranks, pistons, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 15/26 • • of crankshaft systems using solid masses, other than the ordinary pistons, moving with the system [1, 2006.01]
- 15/28 • Counterweights; Attaching or mounting same (for roll-type closures E06B 9/62) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/30 • Flywheels (F16F 15/16 takes precedence; suppression of vibrations in rotating systems using elastic members or friction-damping members moving with the system F16F 15/12; rotary-body aspects in general F16C 13/00, F16C 15/00) [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 15/305 • • made of plastics, e.g. fibre reinforced plastics [FRP] [6, 2006.01]
- 15/31 • • characterised by means for varying the moment of inertia [6, 2006.01]
- 15/315 • • characterised by their supporting arrangement, e.g. mountings, cages, securing inertia member to shaft (F16F 15/31 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 15/32 • Correcting- or balancing-weights or equivalent means for balancing rotating bodies, e.g. vehicle wheels [1, 2, 5, 2006.01]
- 15/34 • • Fastening arrangements therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 15/36 • • operating automatically [5, 2006.01]

**F16G BELTS, CABLES, OR ROPES, PREDOMINANTLY USED FOR DRIVING PURPOSES; CHAINS; FITTINGS PREDOMINANTLY USED THEREFOR**

Subclass index

BELTS; BELT FASTENINGS.....	1/00, 5/00, 3/00, 7/00
CABLES OR ROPES; FASTENINGS THEREFOR.....	9/00, 11/00
CHAINS, CHAIN HOOKS.....	13/00, 15/00, 17/00

- 1/00 Driving-belts** (V-belts F16G 5/00; conveyor belts B65G) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/02 • made of leather (F16G 1/28 takes precedence; making thereof C14B 9/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • made of fibrous material, e.g. textiles, whether rubber-covered or not (F16G 1/28 takes precedence; making thereof D03D) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • made of rubber (F16G 1/28 takes precedence; producing belts from plastics or substances in a plastic state B29D 29/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/08 • • with reinforcement bonded by the rubber [1, 2006.01]
- 1/10 • • • with textile reinforcement [1, 2006.01]
- 1/12 • • • with metal reinforcement [1, 2006.01]
- 1/14 • made of plastics (F16G 1/28 takes precedence; producing belts from plastics or substances in a plastic state B29D 29/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/16 • • with reinforcement bonded by the plastic material [1, 2006.01]
- 1/18 • made of wire (making thereof B21F 43/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/20 • made of a single metal strip (making thereof B21D 53/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/21 • built-up from superimposed layers, e.g. zig-zag folded [1, 2006.01]
- 1/22 • consisting of several parts [1, 2006.01]
- 1/24 • • in the form of links (in the shape of chain links F16G 13/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/26 • • in the form of strips or lamellae [1, 2006.01]
- 1/28 • with a contact surface of special shape, e.g. toothed [1, 2006.01]
- 3/00 Belt fastenings, e.g. for conveyor belts** (for V-belts F16G 7/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • with series of eyes or the like, interposed and linked by a pin to form a hinge (F16G 3/09 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • in which the ends of separate U-shaped or like eyes are attached to the belt by parts penetrating into it [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • with outwardly-bent, mutually-connected belt ends [1, 2006.01]
- 3/07 • Friction clamps, e.g. of grommet-thimble type [1, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • consisting of plates and screw-bolts or rivets (F16G 3/06 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/09 • • the plates forming a hinge [1, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • Joining belts by sewing, sticking, vulcanising, or the like; Constructional adaptations of the belt ends for this purpose [1, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • Joining belts by lacing [1, 2006.01]
- 3/14 • with extensible parts; with resilient parts [1, 2006.01]
- 3/16 • Devices or machines for connecting driving-belts or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 5/00 V-belts, i.e. belts of tapered cross-section** [1, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • made of leather (F16G 5/20 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/04 • made of rubber (F16G 5/20 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • • with reinforcement bonded by the rubber [1, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • • • with textile reinforcement [1, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • • • with metal reinforcement [1, 2006.01]
- 5/12 • made of plastics (F16G 5/20 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/14 • • with reinforcement bonded by the plastic material [1, 2006.01]
- 5/16 • consisting of several parts [1, 2006.01]

- 5/18 • • in the form of links [1, 2006.01]
- 5/20 • with a contact surface of special shape, e.g. toothed [1, 2006.01]
- 5/22 • built-up from superimposed layers [1, 2006.01]
- 5/24 • • zig-zag folded [1, 2006.01]
- 7/00 V-belt fastenings [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • locked, e.g. riveted [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • quickly detachable [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • adjustable, e.g. for tension [1, 2006.01]
- 9/00 Ropes or cables specially adapted for driving, or for being driven by, pulleys or other gearing elements [1, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • made of leather; having enveloping sheathings made of leather [1, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • made of rubber or plastics (F16G 9/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Means for fastening cables or ropes to one another or to other objects** (cable clamps for suspension bridge cables E01D 19/16); **Caps or sleeves for fixing on cables or ropes** (attaching ropes or cables to lift cars or cages B66B 7/08, to winch drums or barrels B66D 1/34; rope clamps in earth drilling E21B 19/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/02 • with parts deformable to grip the cable or cables; Fastening means which engage a sleeve or the like fixed on the cable [1, 2006.01]
- 11/03 • incorporating resiliently-mounted members for attachment of the cable end [1, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • with wedging action, e.g. friction clamps of grommet-thimble type (F16G 11/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/05 • • by using conical plugs insertable between the strands [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • with laterally-arranged screws (F16G 11/02, F16G 11/04 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • Fastenings for securing ends of driving-cables to one another, the fastenings having approximately the same diameter as the cables [1, 2006.01]
- 11/09 • • incorporating hinge joints or pivots for the attachment of the cable ends [1, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • Quick-acting fastenings; Clamps holding in one direction only [1, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • Connections or attachments, e.g. turnbuckles, adapted for straining of cables, ropes or wire [1, 2006.01]
- 11/14 • Devices or coupling-pieces designed for easy formation of adjustable loops, e.g. choker hooks; Hooks or eyes with integral parts designed to facilitate quick attachment to cables or ropes at any point, e.g. by forming loops [1, 2006.01]
- 13/00 Chains** (making thereof B21L) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • Driving-chains [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • • Toothed chains [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • with links connected by parallel driving-pins with or without rollers [1, 2006.01]
- 13/07 • • • the links being of identical shape, e.g. cranked [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • with links closely interposed on the joint pins (F16G 13/04 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • • with universal joints [1, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • Hauling- or hoisting-chains [1, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • • built up from readily-separable links [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 13/16 • • with arrangements for holding electric cables, hoses, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 13/18 • Chains having special overall characteristics [1, 2006.01]
- 13/20 • • stiff; Push-pull chains [1, 2006.01]
- 13/22 • • extensible [1, 2006.01]
- 13/24 • • • resilient [1, 2006.01]
- 15/00 Chain couplings; Shackles; Chain joints; Chain links; Chain bushes** (making chain elements B21L) [1, 2006.01]
- 15/02 • for fastening more or less permanently [1, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • Quickly-detachable chain couplings; Shackles [1, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • • Shackles designed for attachment by joint pins to chain elements, e.g. D-shackles [1, 2006.01]
- 15/08 • Swivels [1, 2006.01]
- 15/10 • Emergency joints or links [1, 2006.01]
- 15/12 • Chain links [1, 2006.01]
- 15/14 • • made of sheet metal, e.g. profiled [1, 2006.01]
- 17/00 Hooks as integral parts of chains** (hooks for cranes B66C 1/34) [1, 2006.01]

## F16H GEARING

### Note(s) [5, 2009.01]

1. Combinations including mechanical gearings are classified in groups F16H 37/00 or F16H 47/00, unless they are provided for in groups F16H 1/00-F16H 35/00.
2. In this subclass, sets of rigidly-connected members are regarded as single members.
3. In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meanings indicated:
  - "toothed gearing" includes worm gearing and other gearing involving at least one wheel or sector provided with teeth or the equivalent, except gearing with chains or toothed belts, which is treated as friction gearing;
  - "conveying motion" includes transmitting energy, and means that the applied and resultant motions are of the same kind, though they may differ in, e.g. speed, direction or extent;
  - "rotary" implies that the motion may continue indefinitely.
  - "oscillating" means moving about an axis to an extent which is limited by the construction of the gearing and which may exceed one revolution, the movement being alternately forwards and backwards during continued operation of the gearing;
  - "reciprocating" means moving substantially in a straight line, the movement being alternately forwards and backwards during continued operation of the gearing;
  - "reversing" or "reversal" means that an applied movement in one direction may produce a resultant movement in either of two opposed directions at will;
  - "central gears" includes any gears whose axis is the main axis of the gearing.
4. Attention is drawn to the following places:

A01D 69/06.....	Gearings in harvesters or mowers
A63H 31/00.....	Gearing for toys
B21B 35/12.....	Toothed-wheel gearing for metal-rolling mills
B60K.....	Arrangement of transmissions in vehicles
B61C 9/00.....	Transmissions for railway locomotives
B62D 3/00.....	Vehicle steering gears
B62M.....	Transmissions for cycles
B63H 23/00.....	Transmissions for marine propulsion
B63H 25/00.....	Marine steering gears
F01-F04.....	Machines, engines, pumps
F15B 15/00.....	Gearings associated with fluid-actuated devices
G01D 5/04.....	Gearing used in indicating or recording apparatus in connection with measuring devices
H03J 1/00.....	Driving arrangements for tuning resonant circuits
H04L 13/04.....	Driving mechanisms for apparatus for transmission of coded digital information.

**Subclass index****GEARINGS NOT LIMITED TO ROTARY MOTION**

## Mechanical gearings

using levers, links, or cams.....	21/00-25/00
using intermittently-driving members.....	27/00-31/00
other gearings; combinations of gearings.....	19/00, 33/00, 35/00, 37/00
details.....	51/00-57/00

Fluid gearing.....	43/00
--------------------	-------

**GEARINGS FOR CONVEYING ROTARY MOTION**

Toothed gearings.....	1/00, 3/00
Using endless flexible members.....	7/00, 9/00
Other friction gearing.....	13/00, 15/00
Fluid gearing.....	39/00, 41/00, 45/00
Using intermittently-driving gearing.....	29/00

**CONTROL**

of change-speed- or reversing-gearings conveying rotary motion.....	59/00-63/00
---	-------------

**COMBINATIONS OF GEARINGS; DIFFERENTIAL GEARINGS; OTHER GEARINGS.....****GENERAL DETAILS OF GEARINGS.....****Toothed gearings for conveying rotary motion****1/00 Toothed gearings for conveying rotary motion**  
(specific for conveying rotary motion with variable gear ratio or for reversing rotary motion F16H 3/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 1/02 • without gears having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • • involving only two intermeshing members [1, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • • • with parallel axes [1, 2006.01]
- 1/08 • • • the members having helical, herring-bone, or like teeth [1, 2006.01]
- 1/10 • • • one of the members being internally toothed [1, 2006.01]
- 1/12 • • • with non-parallel axes [1, 2006.01]
- 1/14 • • • comprising conical gears only [1, 2006.01]
- 1/16 • • • comprising worm and worm-wheel [1, 2006.01]
- 1/18 • • • the members having helical, herring-bone, or like teeth (F16H 1/14 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/20 • • involving more than two intermeshing members [1, 2006.01]
- 1/22 • • • with a plurality of driving or driven shafts; with arrangements for dividing torque between two or more intermediate shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 1/24 • • involving gears essentially having intermeshing elements other than involute or cycloidal teeth (F16H 1/16 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/26 • • Special means compensating for misalignment of axes [1, 2006.01]

- 1/28 • with gears having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 1/30 • • in which an orbital gear has an axis crossing the main axis of the gearing and has helical teeth or is a worm [1, 2006.01]
- 1/32 • • in which the central axis of the gearing lies inside the periphery of an orbital gear [1, 2006.01]
- 1/34 • • involving gears essentially having intermeshing elements other than involute or cycloidal teeth (in worm gearing F16H 1/30) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/36 • • with two central gears coupled by intermeshing orbital gears [1, 2006.01]
- 1/46 • • Systems consisting of a plurality of gear trains, each with orbital gears [1, 2006.01]
- 1/48 • • Special means compensating for misalignment of axes [1, 2006.01]

**3/00 Toothed gearings for conveying rotary motion with variable gear ratio or for reversing rotary motion**  
(speed-changing or reversing mechanisms F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 3/02 • without gears having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • with internally-toothed gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • with worm and worm-wheel or gears essentially having helical or herring-bone teeth [1, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • • exclusively or essentially with continuously-meshing gears, that can be disengaged from their shafts [1, 2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, gears which can be put out of mesh are not taken into consideration if they are used for reversal only.

- 3/083 • • • with radially acting and axially controlled clutching members, e.g. sliding keys [5, 2006.01]
- 3/085 • • • with more than one output shaft [5, 2006.01]
- 3/087 • • • characterised by the disposition of the gears (F16H 3/083, F16H 3/085 take precedence) [5, 2006.01]

**Note(s) [5]**

When counting the countershafts, the reverse countershaft is not taken into consideration if it is used for reversal only.

- 3/089 • • • • all of the meshing gears being supported by a pair of parallel shafts, one being the input shaft and the other the output shaft, there being no countershaft involved [5, 2006.01]
- 3/091 • • • • including a single countershaft [5, 2006.01]
- 3/093 • • • • with two or more countershafts [5, 2006.01]
- 3/095 • • • • • with means for ensuring an even distribution of torque between the countershafts [5, 2006.01]
- 3/097 • • • • • the input and output shafts being aligned on the same axis [5, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • • • with one or more one-way clutches as an essential feature [1, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • • • with means for synchronisation not incorporated in the clutches [1, 2006.01]
- 3/14 • • • Gearings for reversal only [1, 2006.01]
- 3/16 • • essentially with both gears that can be put out of gear and continuously-meshing gears that can be disengaged from their shafts [1, 2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, gears which can be put out of mesh are not taken into consideration if they are used for reversal only.

- 3/18 • • • Gearings for reversal only [1, 2006.01]
- 3/20 • • exclusively or essentially using gears that can be moved out of gear [1, 2006.01]

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

In this group, gears which can be put out of mesh are not taken into consideration if they are used for reversal only.

- 3/22 • • • with gears shiftable only axially [1, 2006.01]
- 3/24 • • • • with driving and driven shafts coaxial [1, 2006.01]
- 3/26 • • • • • and two or more additional shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 3/28 • • • • • • an additional shaft being coaxial with the main shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 3/30 • • • • with driving and driven shafts not coaxial [1, 2006.01]
- 3/32 • • • • • and an additional shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 3/34 • • • with gears shiftable otherwise than only axially [1, 2006.01]
- 3/36 • • • with a single gear meshable with any of a set of coaxial gears of different diameters [1, 2006.01]
- 3/38 • • • with synchro-meshing [1, 2006.01]
- 3/40 • • • Gearings for reversal only [1, 2006.01]

- 3/42 • • with gears having teeth formed or arranged for obtaining multiple gear ratios, e.g. nearly infinitely variable [1, 2006.01]
- 3/44 • using gears having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 3/46 • • Gearings having only two central gears, connected by orbital gears (F16H 3/68-F16H 3/78 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/48 • • • with single orbital gears or pairs of rigidly-connected orbital gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/50 • • • • comprising orbital conical gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/52 • • • • comprising orbital spur gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/54 • • • • • one of the central gears being internally toothed and the other externally toothed [1, 2006.01]
- 3/56 • • • • • both central gears being sun gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/58 • • • with sets of orbital gears, each consisting of two or more intermeshing orbital gears [1, 2006.01]
- 3/60 • • • Gearings for reversal only [1, 2006.01]
- 3/62 • • Gearings having three or more central gears (F16H 3/68-F16H 3/78 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/64 • • • composed of a number of gear trains, the drive always passing through all the trains, each train having not more than one connection for driving another train [1, 2006.01]
- 3/66 • • • composed of a number of gear trains without drive passing from one train to another [1, 2006.01]
- 3/68 • • in which an orbital gear has an axis crossing the main axis of the gearing and has helical teeth or is a worm [1, 2006.01]
- 3/70 • • in which the central axis of the gearing lies inside the periphery of an orbital gear [1, 2006.01]
- 3/72 • • with a secondary drive, e.g. regulating motor, in order to vary speed continuously [1, 2006.01]
- 3/74 • • Complexes, not using actuatable speed-changing or regulating members, e.g. with gear ratio determined by free play of frictional or other forces [1, 2006.01]
- 3/76 • • with an orbital gear having teeth formed or arranged for obtaining multiple gear ratios, e.g. nearly infinitely variable [1, 2006.01]
- 3/78 • • Special adaptation of synchronisation mechanisms to these gearings [1, 2006.01]

**Gearing for conveying rotary motion by endless flexible members**

- 7/00 Gearings for conveying rotary motion by endless flexible members** (specific for conveying rotary motion with variable gear ratio or for reversing rotary motion F16H 9/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/02 • with belts; with V-belts [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • with ropes [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • with chains [1, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • Means for varying tension of belts, ropes, or chains (pulleys of adjustable construction F16H 55/52) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • • by adjusting the axis of a pulley [1, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • • • of an idle pulley [1, 2006.01]
- 7/14 • • • of a driving or driven pulley [1, 2006.01]
- 7/16 • • • • without adjusting the driving or driven shaft [1, 2006.01]

## F16H

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>7/18 • Means for guiding or supporting belts, ropes, or chains (construction of pulleys F16H 55/36) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>7/20 • • Mountings for rollers or pulleys [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>7/22 • Belt, rope, or chain shifters [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>7/24 • Equipment for mounting belts, ropes, or chains [1, 2006.01]</p> <p><b>9/00 Gearing for conveying rotary motion with variable gear ratio, or for reversing rotary motion, by endless flexible members</b> (control of change-speed or reversing-gearings conveying rotary motion F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/02 • without members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/04 • • using belts, V-belts, or ropes (with toothed belts F16H 9/24; pulleys of adjustable construction F16H 55/52) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/06 • • • engaging a stepped pulley [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/08 • • • engaging a conical drum (F16H 9/12 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/10 • • • engaging a pulley provided with radially-actuatable elements carrying the belt [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/12 • • • engaging a pulley built-up out of relatively axially-adjustable parts in which the belt engages the opposite flanges of the pulley directly without interposed belt-supporting members [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/14 • • • • using only one pulley built-up out of adjustable conical parts [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/16 • • • • using two pulleys, both built-up out of adjustable conical parts [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/18 • • • • • only one flange of each pulley being adjustable [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/20 • • • • • both flanges of the pulleys being adjustable [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/22 • • • specially adapted for ropes [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/24 • • using chains, toothed belts, belts in the form of links; Chains or belts specially adapted to such gearing [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>9/26 • with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> | <p>15/02 • without members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/04 • • Gearings providing a continuous range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/06 • • • in which a member A of uniform effective diameter mounted on a shaft may co-operate with different parts of a member B [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/08 • • • • in which the member B is a disc with a flat or approximately-flat friction surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/10 • • • • • in which the axes of the two members cross or intersect [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/12 • • • • • in which one or each member is duplicated, e.g. for obtaining better transmission, for lessening the reaction forces on the bearings [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/14 • • • • • in which the axes of the members are parallel or approximately parallel [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/16 • • • • in which the member B has a conical friction surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/18 • • • • • externally [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/20 • • • • • co-operating with the outer rim of the member A, which is perpendicular or nearly perpendicular to the friction surface of the member B [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/22 • • • • • the axes of the members being parallel or approximately parallel [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/24 • • • • • internally [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/26 • • • • in which the member B has a spherical friction surface centered on its axis of revolution [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/28 • • • • • with external friction surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/30 • • • • • with internal friction surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/32 • • • • • in which the member B has a curved friction surface formed as a surface of a body of revolution generated by a curve which is neither a circular arc centered on its axis of revolution nor a straight line [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/34 • • • • • with convex friction surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/36 • • • • • with concave friction surface, e.g. a hollow toroid surface [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/38 • • • • • with two members B having hollow toroid surfaces opposite to each other, the member or members A being adjustably mounted between the surfaces [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/40 • • • in which two members co-operate by means of balls, or rollers of uniform effective diameter, not mounted on shafts [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/42 • • • in which two members co-operate by means of rings or by means of parts of endless flexible members pressed between the first-mentioned members [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/44 • • • in which two members of non-uniform effective diameter directly co-operate with one another [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/46 • • Gearings providing a discontinuous or stepped range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/48 • with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/50 • • Gearings providing a continuous range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/52 • • • in which a member of uniform effective diameter mounted on a shaft may co-operate with different parts of another member [1, 2006.01]</p> |
|--|---|

### Other friction gearing for conveying rotary motion

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>13/00 Gearing for conveying rotary motion with constant gear ratio by friction between rotary members</b> [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/02 • without members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/04 • • with balls or with rollers acting in a similar manner [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/06 • with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/08 • • with balls or with rollers acting in a similar manner [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/10 • Means for influencing the pressure between the members [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/12 • • by magnetic forces [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>13/14 • • for automatically varying the pressure mechanically [1, 2006.01]</p> <p><b>15/00 Gearings for conveying rotary motion with variable gear ratio, or for reversing rotary motion, by friction between rotary members</b> (control of change-speed or reversing-gearings conveying rotary motion F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00) [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/01 • characterised by the use of a magnetisable powder or liquid as friction medium between the rotary members [2, 2006.01]</p> | <p>15/40 • • • in which two members co-operate by means of balls, or rollers of uniform effective diameter, not mounted on shafts [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/42 • • • in which two members co-operate by means of rings or by means of parts of endless flexible members pressed between the first-mentioned members [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/44 • • • in which two members of non-uniform effective diameter directly co-operate with one another [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/46 • • Gearings providing a discontinuous or stepped range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/48 • with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/50 • • Gearings providing a continuous range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]</p> <p>15/52 • • • in which a member of uniform effective diameter mounted on a shaft may co-operate with different parts of another member [1, 2006.01]</p> |
|--|---|

- 15/54 • • • in which two members co-operate by means of rings or by means of parts of endless flexible members pressed between the first-mentioned members [1, 2006.01]
- 15/56 • • Gearings providing a discontinuous or stepped range of gear ratios [1, 2006.01]

**19/00 Gearings comprising essentially only toothed gears or friction members and not capable of conveying indefinitely-continuing rotary motion** (with intermittently-driving members F16H 27/00-F16H 31/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 19/02 • for interconverting rotary motion and reciprocating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • • comprising a rack [1, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • • comprising an endless flexible member [1, 2006.01]
- 19/08 • for interconverting rotary motion and oscillating motion [1, 2006.01]

**Gearing for conveying or converting motion by means of levers, links, cams or screw-and-nut mechanisms**

- 21/00 Gearings comprising primarily only links or levers, with or without slides** (F16H 23/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/02 • the movements of two or more independently-moving members being combined into a single movement [1, 2006.01]
- 21/04 • Guiding mechanisms, e.g. for straight-line guidance [1, 2006.01]
- 21/06 • which can be made ineffective when desired [1, 2006.01]
- 21/08 • • by pushing a reciprocating rod out of its operative position [1, 2006.01]
- 21/10 • all movement being in, or parallel to, a single plane [1, 2006.01]
- 21/12 • • for conveying rotary motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/14 • • • by means of cranks, eccentrics, or like members fixed to one rotary member and guided along tracks on the other [1, 2006.01]
- 21/16 • • for interconverting rotary motion and reciprocating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/18 • • • Crank gearings; Eccentric gearings [1, 2006.01]
- 21/20 • • • with adjustment of throw [1, 2006.01]
- 21/22 • • • with one connecting-rod and one guided slide to each crank or eccentric [1, 2006.01]
- 21/24 • • • • without further links or guides [1, 2006.01]
- 21/26 • • • • with toggle action [1, 2006.01]
- 21/28 • • • • with cams or additional guides [1, 2006.01]
- 21/30 • • • • with members having rolling contact [1, 2006.01]
- 21/32 • • • • with additional members comprising only pivoted links or arms [1, 2006.01]
- 21/34 • • • • with two or more connecting-rods to each crank or eccentric [1, 2006.01]
- 21/36 • • • • without swinging connecting-rod, e.g. with epicyclic parallel motion, slot-and- crank motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/38 • • • • with means for temporary energy accumulation, e.g. to overcome dead-centre positions [1, 2006.01]

- 21/40 • • for interconverting rotary motion and oscillating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/42 • • • with adjustable throw [1, 2006.01]
- 21/44 • • for conveying or interconverting oscillating or reciprocating motions [1, 2006.01]
- 21/46 • with movements in three dimensions [1, 2006.01]
- 21/48 • • for conveying rotary motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/50 • • for interconverting rotary motion and reciprocating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/52 • • for interconverting rotary motion and oscillating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 21/54 • • for conveying or interconverting oscillating or reciprocating motions [1, 2006.01]

**23/00 Wobble-plate gearings; Oblique-crank gearings** [1, 2006.01]

- 23/02 • with adjustment of throw by changing the position of the wobble-member (gearings in which the transmission ratio is changed by adjustment of a wobble-plate F16H 29/04; gearings with gyroscopic action, e.g. comprising wobble-plates F16H 33/10) [1, 2006.01]
- 23/04 • with non-rotary wobble-members [1, 2006.01]
- 23/06 • • with sliding members hinged to reciprocating members [1, 2006.01]
- 23/08 • • connected to reciprocating members by connecting-rods [1, 2006.01]
- 23/10 • with rotary wobble-plates with plane surfaces [1, 2006.01]

**25/00 Gearings comprising primarily only cams, cam-followers and screw-and-nut mechanisms** [1, 2006.01]

- 25/02 • the movements of two or more independently-moving members being combined into a single movement [1, 2006.01]
- 25/04 • for conveying rotary motion [1, 2006.01]
- 25/06 • • with intermediate members guided along tracks on both rotary members [1, 2006.01]
- 25/08 • for interconverting rotary motion and reciprocating motion (F16H 23/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/10 • • with adjustable throw [1, 2006.01]
- 25/12 • • with reciprocation along the axis of rotation, e.g. gearings with helical grooves and automatic reversal [1, 2006.01]
- 25/14 • • with reciprocation perpendicular to the axis of rotation (crank or eccentric gearings without swinging connecting-rod F16H 21/36) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/16 • for interconverting rotary motion and oscillating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 25/18 • for conveying or interconverting oscillating or reciprocating motions [1, 2006.01]
- 25/20 • • Screw mechanisms (with automatic reversal F16H 25/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/22 • • • with balls, rollers, or similar members between the co-operating parts; Elements essential to the use of such members [1, 2006.01]
- 25/24 • • • Elements essential to such mechanisms, e.g. screws, nuts (F16H 25/22 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]

**Gearings with intermittently-driving members**

- 27/00 Step-by-step mechanisms without freewheel members, e.g. Geneva drives** [1, 2006.01]

## F16H

- 27/02 • with at least one reciprocating or oscillating transmission member [1, 2006.01]
- 27/04 • for converting continuous rotation into a step-by-step rotary movement [1, 2006.01]
- 27/06 • • Mechanisms with driving pins in driven slots, e.g. Geneva drives [1, 2006.01]
- 27/08 • • with driving toothed gears with interrupted toothing [1, 2006.01]
- 27/10 • • obtained by means of disengageable transmission members, combined or not combined with mechanisms according to group F16H 27/06 or F16H 27/08 [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 Gearings for conveying rotary motion with intermittently-driving members, e.g. with freewheel action [1, 2006.01]**
- 29/02 • between one of the shafts and an oscillating or reciprocating intermediate member, not rotating with either of the shafts (F16H 29/20, F16H 29/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/04 • • in which the transmission ratio is changed by adjustment of a crank, an eccentric, a wobble-plate, or a cam, on one of the shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 29/06 • • • with concentric shafts, an annular intermediate member moving around and being supported on an adjustable crank or eccentric [1, 2006.01]
- 29/08 • • in which the transmission ratio is changed by adjustment of the path of movement, the location of the pivot, or the effective length, of an oscillating connecting member [1, 2006.01]
- 29/10 • • in which the transmission ratio is changed by directly acting on the intermittently driving members [1, 2006.01]
- 29/12 • between rotary driving and driven members (F16H 29/20, F16H 29/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/14 • • in which the transmission ratio is changed by adjustment of an otherwise stationary guide member for the intermittently-driving members [1, 2006.01]
- 29/16 • • in which the transmission ratio is changed by adjustment of the distance between the axes of the rotary members [1, 2006.01]
- 29/18 • • • in which the intermittently-driving members slide along approximately radial guides while rotating with one of the rotary members [1, 2006.01]
- 29/20 • the intermittently-acting members being shaped as worms, screws, or racks [1, 2006.01]
- 29/22 • with automatic speed change [1, 2006.01]
- 31/00 Other gearings with freewheeling members or other intermittently-driving members (F16H 21/00, F16H 23/00, F16H 25/00 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]**

---

- 33/00 Gearings based on repeated accumulation and delivery of energy [1, 2006.01]**
- 33/02 • Rotary transmissions with mechanical accumulators, e.g. weights, springs, intermittently-connected flywheels [1, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • • Gearings for conveying rotary motion with variable velocity ratio, in which self-regulation is sought [1, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • • • based essentially on spring action [1, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • • based essentially on inertia [1, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • • • • with gyroscopic action, e.g. comprising wobble-plates, oblique cranks [1, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • • • with a driving member connected differentially with both a driven member and an oscillatory member with large resistance to movement, e.g. Constantinesco gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • • • • having orbital members influenced by regulating masses [1, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • • • • which have their own free motion, or consist of fluid [1, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • • • • of which the motion is constrained [1, 2006.01]
- 33/20 • for interconversion, based essentially on inertia, of rotary motion and reciprocating or oscillating motion [1, 2006.01]
- 35/00 Gearings or mechanisms with other special functional features [1, 2006.01]**
- 35/02 • for conveying rotary motion with cyclically-varying velocity ratio [1, 2006.01]
- 35/06 • Gearings designed to allow relative movement between supports thereof without ill effects (special means compensating for misalignment of axes F16H 1/26, F16H 1/48) [1, 2006.01]
- 35/08 • for adjustment of members on moving parts from a stationary place [1, 2006.01]
- 35/10 • Arrangements or devices for absorbing overload or preventing damage by overload [1, 2006.01]
- 35/12 • Transmitting mechanisms with delayed effect [1, 2006.01]
- 35/14 • Mechanisms with only two stable positions, e.g. acting at definite angular positions [1, 2006.01]
- 35/16 • Mechanisms for movements or movement relations conforming to mathematical formulae [1, 2006.01]
- 35/18 • Turning devices for rotatable members, e.g. shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 37/00 Combinations of mechanical gearings, not provided for in groups F16H 1/00-F16H 35/00 (combinations of mechanical gearing with fluid clutches or fluid gearing F16H 47/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 37/02 • comprising essentially only toothed or friction gearings [1, 2006.01]
- 37/04 • • Combinations of toothed gearings only (F16H 37/06 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/06 • • with a plurality of driving or driven shafts; with arrangements for dividing torque between two or more intermediate shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 37/08 • • • with differential gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 37/10 • • • • at both ends of intermediate shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 37/12 • Gearings comprising primarily toothed or friction gearing, links or levers, and cams, or members of at least two of these three types (gearings with cranks, eccentrics, or like members fixed to one rotary member and guided along tracks on the other F16H 21/14; crank or eccentric gearings with cams or additional guides, or with members having rolling contact F16H 21/28, F16H 21/30) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/14 • • the movements of two or more independently-moving members being combined into a single movement [1, 2006.01]
- 37/16 • • with a driving or driven member which both rotates or oscillates on its axis and reciprocates [1, 2006.01]

**Fluid gearing [3]**

- 39/00 Rotary fluid gearing using pumps and motors of the volumetric type, i.e. passing a predetermined volume of fluid per revolution** (control of exclusively fluid gearing F16H 61/38) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 39/01 • Pneumatic gearing; Gearing working with subatmospheric pressure [2, 2006.01]
- 39/02 • with liquid motors at a distance from liquid pumps [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • with liquid motor and pump combined in one unit [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • • pump and motor being of the same type [1, 2006.01]
- 39/08 • • • each with one main shaft and provided with pistons reciprocating in cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 39/10 • • • • with cylinders arranged around, and parallel or approximately parallel to, the main axis of the gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 39/12 • • • • • with stationary cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 39/14 • • • • • with cylinders carried in rotary cylinder blocks or cylinder-bearing members [1, 2006.01]
- 39/16 • • • • • with cylinders arranged perpendicular to the main axis of the gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 39/18 • • • • • the connections of the pistons being at the outer ends of the cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 39/20 • • • • • the connections of the pistons being at the inner ends of the cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 39/22 • • • with liquid chambers shaped as bodies of revolution concentric with the main axis of the gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 39/24 • • • • with rotary displacement members, e.g. provided with axially or radially movable vanes passing movable sealing members [1, 2006.01]
- 39/26 • • • with liquid chambers not shaped as bodies of revolution or shaped as bodies of revolution eccentric to the main axis of the gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 39/28 • • • • with liquid chambers formed in rotary members [1, 2006.01]
- 39/30 • • • • with liquid chambers formed in stationary members [1, 2006.01]
- 39/32 • • • • • with sliding vanes carried by the rotor [1, 2006.01]
- 39/34 • • • • in which a rotor on one shaft co-operates with a rotor on another shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 39/36 • • • • toothed-gear type [1, 2006.01]
- 39/38 • • • • Displacement screw-pump type [1, 2006.01]
- 39/40 • • • Hydraulic differential gearings, e.g. having a rotary input housing with interconnected liquid chambers for both outputs [1, 2006.01]
- 39/42 • • pump and motor being of different types [1, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Rotary fluid gearing of the hydrokinetic type** (control of exclusively fluid gearing F16H 61/38) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 41/02 • with pump and turbine connected by conduits or ducts [1, 2006.01]
- 41/04 • Combined pump-turbine units [1, 2006.01]
- 41/22 • • Gearing systems consisting of a plurality of hydrokinetic units operating alternatively, e.g. made effective or ineffective by filling or emptying or by mechanical clutches [1, 2006.01]
- 41/24 • Details [1, 2006.01]
- 41/26 • • Shape of runner blades or channels with respect to function [1, 2006.01]

- 41/28 • • with respect to manufacture, e.g. blade attachment [1, 2006.01]
- 41/30 • • relating to venting, lubrication, cooling, circulation of the cooling medium [1, 2006.01]
- 41/32 • Selection of working fluids [1, 2006.01]
- 43/00 Other fluid gearing, e.g. with oscillating input or output [1, 2, 2006.01]**
- 43/02 • Fluid gearing actuated by pressure waves [2, 2006.01]
- 45/00 Combinations of fluid gearings for conveying rotary motion with couplings or clutches** (gearing systems consisting of a plurality of hydrokinetic units operating alternatively F16H 41/22) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- Note(s)**
- Clutches for varying working conditions in fluid torque-converters are regarded as a part of the latter.
- 45/02 • with mechanical clutches for bridging a fluid gearing of the hydrokinetic type (control of torque converter lock-up clutches F16H 61/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 47/00 Combinations of mechanical gearing with fluid clutches or fluid gearing [1, 2, 2006.01]**
- 47/02 • the fluid gearing being of the volumetric type [1, 2006.01]
- 47/04 • • the mechanical gearing being of the type with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 47/06 • the fluid gearing being of the hydrokinetic type [1, 2006.01]
- 47/07 • • using two or more power-transmitting fluid circuits (F16H 47/10 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 47/08 • • the mechanical gearing being of the type with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 47/10 • • • using two or more power-transmitting fluid circuits [2, 2006.01]
- 47/12 • • • the members with orbital motion having vanes interacting with the fluid [2, 2006.01]
- 
- 48/00 Differential gearings** (cooling or lubricating of differential gearing F16H 57/04) [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- Note(s) [2012.01]**
- When classifying in this group, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in all appropriate places.
- 48/05 • Multiple interconnected differential sets [2012.01]
- 48/06 • with gears having orbital motion [6, 2006.01]
- 48/08 • • with orbital conical gears [6, 2006.01]
- 48/10 • • with orbital spur gears [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- 48/11 • • • having intermeshing planet gears [2012.01]
- 48/12 • without gears having orbital motion [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- 48/14 • • with cams [6, 2006.01]
- 48/16 • • with freewheels [6, 2006.01]
- 48/18 • • with fluid gearing [6, 2006.01]
- 48/19 • • consisting of two linked clutches [2012.01]
- 48/20 • Arrangements for suppressing or influencing the differential action, e.g. locking devices [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- 48/22 • • using friction clutches or brakes [6, 2006.01]
- 48/24 • • using positive clutches or brakes [6, 2006.01]
- 48/26 • • using fluid action, e.g. viscous clutches [6, 2006.01]

## F16H

- 48/27 • • using internally-actuatable fluid pressure, e.g. internal pump types [2012.01]
- 48/28 • • using self-locking gears or self-braking gears [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- 48/285 • • • with self-braking intermeshing gears having parallel axes and having worms or helical teeth [2012.01]
- 48/29 • • • with self-braking intermeshing gears having perpendicular arranged axes and having worms or helical teeth [2012.01]
- 48/295 • • using multiple means for force boosting [2012.01]
- 48/30 • • using externally-actuatable means [6, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- 48/32 • • • using fluid pressure actuators [2012.01]
- 48/34 • • • using electromagnetic or electric actuators [2012.01]
- 48/36 • characterised by intentionally generating speed difference between outputs [2012.01]
- 48/38 • Constructional details (the outer casing comprising the differential and supporting input and output shafts F16H 57/037) [2012.01]
- 48/40 • • characterised by features of the rotating cases [2012.01]
- 48/42 • • characterised by features of the input shafts, e.g. mounting of drive gears thereon [2012.01]
- 49/00 **Other gearing [1, 2006.01]**

### Details of gearing or mechanisms

- 51/00 **Levers of gearing mechanisms [1, 2006.01]**
- 51/02 • adjustable [1, 2006.01]
- 53/00 **Cams or cam-followers, e.g. rollers for gearing mechanisms [1, 2006.01]**
- 53/02 • Single-track cams for single-revolution cycles; Camshafts with such cams [1, 2006.01]
- 53/04 • • Adjustable cams [1, 2006.01]
- 53/06 • Cam-followers (F16H 53/08 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 53/08 • Multi-track cams, e.g. for cycles consisting of several revolutions; Cam-followers specially adapted for such cams [1, 2006.01]
- 55/00 **Elements with teeth or friction surfaces for conveying motion; Worms, pulleys or sheaves for gearing mechanisms (of screw-and-nut gearing F16H 25/00) [1, 4, 2006.01]**
- 55/02 • Toothed members; Worms [1, 2006.01]
- 55/06 • • Use of materials; Use of treatments of toothed members or worms to affect their intrinsic material properties [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/08 • • Profiling [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/10 • • Constructively simple tooth shapes, e.g. shaped as pins, as balls [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/12 • • with body or rim assembled out of detachable parts [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/14 • • Construction providing resilience or vibration-damping (F16H 55/06 takes precedence) [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/16 • • • relating to teeth only [1, 3, 2006.01]
- 55/17 • • Toothed wheels (worm wheels F16H 55/22; chain wheels F16H 55/30) [3, 2006.01]
- 55/18 • • • Special devices for taking-up backlash [1, 2006.01]
- 55/20 • • • for bevel gears [1, 2006.01]
- 55/22 • • for transmissions with crossing shafts, especially worms, worm-gears [1, 2006.01]
- 55/24 • • • Special devices for taking up backlash [1, 2006.01]
- 55/26 • • Racks [1, 2006.01]
- 55/28 • • • Special devices for taking up backlash [1, 2006.01]
- 55/30 • • Chain wheels [1, 2006.01]
- 55/32 • Friction members [1, 2006.01]
- 55/34 • • Non-adjustable friction discs [1, 2006.01]
- 55/36 • • Pulleys (with features essential for adjustment F16H 55/52) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/38 • • • Means or measures for increasing adhesion [1, 2006.01]
- 55/40 • • • with spokes (F16H 55/48 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/42 • • • Laminated pulleys [1, 2006.01]
- 55/44 • • • Sheet-metal pulleys [1, 2006.01]
- 55/46 • • • Split pulleys [1, 2006.01]
- 55/48 • • • manufactured exclusively or in part of non-metallic material, e.g. plastics (F16H 55/38, F16H 55/42, F16H 55/46 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/49 • • • Features essential to V-belt pulleys [2, 2006.01]
- 55/50 • • • Features essential to rope pulleys [1, 2006.01]
- 55/52 • • Pulleys or friction discs of adjustable construction [1, 2006.01]
- 55/54 • • • of which the bearing parts are radially adjustable [1, 2006.01]
- 55/56 • • • of which the bearing parts are relatively axially adjustable [1, 2006.01]
- 57/00 **General details of gearing (of screw-and-nut gearing F16H 25/00; of fluid gearing F16H 39/00-F16H 43/00) [1, 2006.01, 2012.01]**
- 57/01 • Monitoring wear or stress of gearing elements, e.g. for triggering maintenance [2012.01]
- 57/02 • Gearboxes; Mounting gearing therein [1, 2006.01, 2012.01]
- Note(s) [2012.01]**  
When classifying in this group, in the absence of an indication to the contrary, classification is made in all appropriate subgroups.
- 57/021 • • Shaft support structures, e.g. partition walls, bearing eyes, casing walls or covers with bearings [2012.01]
- 57/022 • • • Adjustment of gear shafts or bearings (for compensating misalignment of axes of toothed gears without orbital motion F16H 1/26; for compensating misalignment of axes of planetary gears F16H 1/48) [2012.01]
- 57/023 • • Mounting or installation of gears or shafts in gearboxes, e.g. methods or means for assembly [2012.01]
- 57/025 • • Support of gearboxes, e.g. torque arms, or attachment to other devices [2012.01]
- 57/027 • • characterised by means for venting gearboxes, e.g. air breathers [2012.01]
- 57/028 • • characterised by means for reducing vibration or noise [2012.01]
- 57/029 • • characterised by means for sealing gearboxes, e.g. to improve airtightness [2012.01]
- 57/03 • • characterised by means for reinforcing gearboxes, e.g. ribs [2012.01]
- 57/031 • • characterised by covers or lids for gearboxes [2012.01]

- 57/032 • • characterised by the materials used [2012.01]
- 57/033 • • Series gearboxes, e.g. gearboxes based on the same design being available in different sizes or gearboxes using a combination of several standardised units [2012.01]
- 57/035 • • Gearboxes for gearing with endless flexible members [2012.01]
- 57/037 • • Gearboxes for accommodating differential gearing (rotating cases for differential gearings F16H 48/40) [2012.01]
- 57/038 • • Gearboxes for accommodating bevel gears (F16H 57/037 takes precedence) [2012.01]
- 57/039 • • Gearboxes for accommodating worm gears [2012.01]
- 57/04 • Features relating to lubrication or cooling (control of lubrication or cooling in hydrostatic gearing F16H 61/4165) [1, 2006.01, 2010.01]
- 57/05 • • of chains [1, 2006.01]
- 57/08 • of gearings with members having orbital motion [1, 2006.01]
- 57/10 • • Braking arrangements [1, 2006.01]
- 57/12 • Arrangements for adjusting or for taking-up backlash not provided for elsewhere [2, 2006.01]

### **Control of gearing conveying rotary motion [5]**

#### **Note(s) [5, 2006.01]**

1. Attention is drawn to the Notes following the title of subclass B60W.
2. In groups F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00, clutches positioned within a gearbox are considered as comprising part of the gearings.
3. In groups F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:
  - "final output element" means the final element which is moved to establish a gear ratio, i.e. which achieves the linking between two power transmission means, e.g. reverse idler gear, gear cluster, coupling sleeve, apply piston of a hydraulic clutch;
  - "mechanism" means a kinematic chain consisting either of a single element or alternatively of a series of elements, the position of each point on the kinematic chain being derivable from the position of any other point on the chain, and therefore, for a given position of a point on one of the elements forming the kinematic chain there is only one position for each of the other points on the element or series of elements forming the kinematic chain;
  - "final output mechanism" means the mechanism which includes the final output element;
  - "actuating mechanism" means the mechanism, the movement of which causes the movement of another mechanism by being in mutual contact;
  - "final actuating mechanism" means the mechanism actuating the final output mechanism.
4. Combinations of features individually covered by group F16H 61/00 and one or both of groups F16H 59/00 and F16H 63/00 are classified in group F16H 61/00.
5. Combinations of features individually covered by groups F16H 59/00 and F16H 63/00 are classified in group F16H 63/00.

6. When classifying in groups F16H 59/00-F16H 63/00, control inputs or types of gearing which are not identified by the classification according to Notes (4) and (5), and which are considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified. Such non-obligatory classification should be given as "additional information", e.g. selected from subgroup F16H 61/66 relating to the type of gearing controlled or from group F16H 59/00 relating to control inputs.

### **59/00 Control inputs to change-speed- or reversing-gearings for conveying rotary motion [5, 2006.01]**

- 59/02 • Selector apparatus [5, 2006.01]
- 59/04 • • Ratio selector apparatus [5, 2006.01]
- 59/06 • • • the ratio being infinitely variable [5, 2006.01]
- 59/08 • • Range selector apparatus [5, 2006.01]
- 59/10 • • • comprising levers [5, 2006.01]
- 59/12 • • • comprising push button devices [5, 2006.01]
- 59/14 • Inputs being a function of torque or torque demand [5, 2006.01]
- 59/16 • • Dynamometric measurement of torque [5, 2006.01]
- 59/18 • • dependent on the position of the accelerator pedal [5, 2006.01]
- 59/20 • • • Kickdown [5, 2006.01]
- 59/22 • • • Idle position [5, 2006.01]
- 59/24 • • dependent on the throttle opening [5, 2006.01]
- 59/26 • • dependent on pressure [5, 2006.01]
- 59/28 • • • Gasifier pressure in gas turbines [5, 2006.01]
- 59/30 • • • Intake manifold vacuum [5, 2006.01]
- 59/32 • • • Supercharger pressure in internal combustion engines [5, 2006.01]
- 59/34 • • dependent on fuel feed [5, 2006.01]
- 59/36 • Inputs being a function of speed [5, 2006.01]
- 59/38 • • of gearing elements [5, 2006.01]
- 59/40 • • • Output shaft speed [5, 2006.01]
- 59/42 • • • Input shaft speed [5, 2006.01]
- 59/44 • • dependent on machine speed (F16H 59/46 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 59/46 • • dependent on a comparison between speeds [5, 2006.01]
- 59/48 • Inputs being a function of acceleration [5, 2006.01]
- 59/50 • Inputs being a function of the status of the machine, e.g. position of doors or safety belts [5, 2006.01]
- 59/52 • • dependent on the weight of the machine, e.g. change in weight resulting from passengers boarding a bus [5, 2006.01]
- 59/54 • • dependent on signals from the brakes, e.g. parking brakes [5, 2006.01]
- 59/56 • • dependent on signals from the main clutch [5, 2006.01]
- 59/58 • • dependent on signals from the steering [5, 2006.01]
- 59/60 • Inputs being a function of ambient conditions [5, 2006.01]
  - • Atmospheric pressure [5, 2006.01]
  - • Atmospheric temperature [5, 2006.01]
  - • Road conditions, e.g. slope, slippery [5, 2006.01]
- 59/62 • Inputs being a function of gearing status [5, 2006.01]
- 59/64 • • dependent on the ratio established [5, 2006.01]
- 59/66 • • dependent on oil characteristics, e.g. temperature, viscosity [5, 2006.01]
- 59/68 • Inputs being a function of engine parameters (F16H 59/14 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 59/70 • • dependent on the ratio established [5, 2006.01]
- 59/72 • • dependent on oil characteristics, e.g. temperature, viscosity [5, 2006.01]
- 59/74 • Inputs being a function of engine parameters (F16H 59/14 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]

## F16H

- 59/76 • • Number of cylinders operating [5, 2006.01]
- 59/78 • • Temperature [5, 2006.01]
- 61/00 Control functions within change-speed- or reversing-gearings for conveying rotary motion [5, 2006.01]**
- 61/02 • characterised by the signals used [5, 2006.01]
- 61/04 • Smoothing ratio shift [5, 2006.01]
- 61/06 • • by controlling rate of change of fluid pressure [5, 2006.01]
- 61/08 • • Timing control [5, 2006.01]
- 61/10 • Controlling shift hysteresis [5, 2006.01]
- 61/12 • Detecting malfunction or potential malfunction, e.g. fail safe (in control of hydrostatic gearing F16H 61/4192) [5, 2006.01, 2010.01]
- 61/14 • Control of torque converter lock-up clutches [5, 2006.01]
- 61/16 • Inhibiting shift during unfavourable conditions (F16H 61/18 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 61/18 • Preventing unintentional or unsafe shift [5, 2006.01]
- 61/20 • Preventing gear creeping [5, 2006.01]
- 61/21 • Providing engine brake control [7, 2006.01]
- 61/22 • Locking (constructional features of locking or disabling mechanisms F16H 63/34) [5, 2006.01]
- 61/24 • Providing feel, e.g. to enable selection [5, 2006.01]
- 61/26 • Generation or transmission of movements for final actuating mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [5]**
- 1. The generation or transmission of movements comprising only the selector apparatus, is classified in group F16H 59/00.
- 2. The generation or transmission of movements, when part of the final output mechanisms, is classified in group F16H 63/00.
- 61/28 • • with at least one movement of the final actuating mechanism being caused by a non-mechanical force, e.g. power-assisted [5, 2006.01]
- 61/30 • • • Hydraulic motors therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 61/32 • • • Electric motors therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 61/34 • • comprising two mechanisms, one for the preselection movement, and one for the shifting movement (F16H 61/36 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 61/36 • • with at least one movement being transmitted by a cable [5, 2006.01]
- 61/38 • Control of exclusively fluid gearing [5, 2006.01]
- 61/40 • • hydrostatic [5, 2006.01, 2010.01]
- 61/4008 • • • Control of circuit pressure [2010.01]
- 61/4017 • • • • Control of high pressure, e.g. avoiding excess pressure by a relief valve [2010.01]
- 61/4026 • • • • Control of low pressure [2010.01]
- 61/4035 • • • Control of circuit flow [2010.01]
- 61/4043 • • • Control of a bypass valve [2010.01]
- 61/4052 • • • • by using a variable restriction, e.g. an orifice valve [2010.01]
- 61/4061 • • • Control related to directional control valves, e.g. change-over valves, for crossing the feeding conduits [2010.01]
- 61/4069 • • • Valves related to the control of neutral, e.g. shut off valves [2010.01]
- 61/4078 • • • Fluid exchange between hydrostatic circuits and external sources or consumers [2010.01]
- 61/4096 • • • with pressure accumulators [2010.01]
- 61/4104 • • • • Flushing, e.g. by using flushing valves or by connection to exhaust [2010.01]
- 61/4131 • • • • Fluid exchange by aspiration from reservoirs, e.g. sump [2010.01]
- 61/4139 • • • • Replenishing or scavenging pumps, e.g. auxiliary charge pumps [2010.01]
- 61/4148 • • • Open loop circuits [2010.01]
- 61/4157 • • • Control of braking, e.g. preventing pump over-speeding when motor acts as a pump [2010.01]
- 61/4165 • • • Control of cooling or lubricating [2010.01]
- 61/4174 • • • Control of venting, e.g. removing trapped air [2010.01]
- 61/4183 • • • Preventing or reducing vibrations or noise, e.g. avoiding cavitations [2010.01]
- 61/4192 • • • Detecting malfunction or potential malfunction, e.g. fail safe [2010.01]
- 61/42 • • • involving adjustment of a pump or motor with adjustable output or capacity [5, 2006.01, 2010.01]
- 61/421 • • • • Motor capacity control by electro-hydraulic control means, e.g. using solenoid valves [2010.01]
- 61/423 • • • • Motor capacity control by fluid pressure control means [2010.01]
- 61/425 • • • • Motor capacity control by electric actuators [2010.01]
- 61/427 • • • • Motor capacity control by mechanical control means, e.g. by levers or pedals [2010.01]
- 61/431 • • • • Pump capacity control by electro-hydraulic control means, e.g. using solenoid valve [2010.01]
- 61/433 • • • • Pump capacity control by fluid pressure control means [2010.01]
- 61/435 • • • • Pump capacity control by electric actuators [2010.01]
- 61/437 • • • • Pump capacity control by mechanical control means, e.g. by levers or pedals [2010.01]
- 61/438 • • • • Control of forward-reverse switching, e.g. control of the swash plate causing discharge in two directions [2010.01]
- 61/439 • • • • Control of the neutral position, e.g. by zero tilt rotation holding means [2010.01]
- 61/44 • • • with more than one pump or motor unit in operation [5, 2006.01]
- 61/444 • • • • by changing the number of pump or motor units in operation [2010.01]
- 61/448 • • • • Control circuits for tandem pumps or motors [2010.01]
- 61/452 • • • • Selectively controlling multiple pumps or motors, e.g. switching between series or parallel [2010.01]
- 61/456 • • • • Control of the balance of torque or speed between pumps or motors [2010.01]
- 61/46 • • • Automatic regulation in accordance with output requirements [5, 2006.01, 2010.01]
- 61/462 • • • • for achieving a target speed ratio [2010.01]
- 61/465 • • • • for achieving a target input speed [2010.01]
- 61/468 • • • • for achieving a target input torque [2010.01]
- 61/47 • • • • for achieving a target output speed [2010.01]
- 61/472 • • • • for achieving a target output torque [2010.01]
- 61/475 • • • • for achieving a target power, e.g. input power or output power [2010.01]
- 61/478 • • • • for preventing overload, e.g. high pressure limitation [2010.01]
- 61/48 • • hydrodynamic [5, 2006.01]

- 61/50 • • • controlled by changing the flow, force, or reaction of the liquid in the working circuit, while maintaining a completely filled working circuit [5, 2006.01]
- 61/52 • • • • by altering the position of blades [5, 2006.01]
- 61/54 • • • • • by means of axially-shiftable blade runners [5, 2006.01]
- 61/56 • • • • • to change the blade angle [5, 2006.01]
- 61/58 • • • • • by change of the mechanical connection of, or between, the runners [5, 2006.01]
- 61/60 • • • • • exclusively by the use of freewheel clutches [5, 2006.01]
- 61/62 • • • • • involving use of a speed-changing gearing or of a clutch in the connection between runners (F16H 61/60 takes precedence; combinations of fluid gearings for conveying rotary motion with mechanical clutches for bridging a fluid gearing of the hydrokinetic type F16H 45/02) [5, 2006.01]
- 61/64 • • • controlled by changing the amount of liquid in the working circuit [5, 2006.01]
- 61/66 • specially adapted for continuously variable gearings (control of exclusively fluid gearing F16H 61/38) [2006.01]
- 61/662 • • with endless flexible members [2006.01]
- 61/664 • • Friction gearings [2006.01]
- 61/68 • specially adapted for stepped gearings [2006.01]
- 61/682 • • with interruption of drive [2006.01]
- 61/684 • • without interruption of drive [2006.01]
- 61/686 • • • with orbital gears [2006.01]
- 61/688 • • • with two inputs, e.g. selection of one of two torque-flow paths by clutches [2006.01]
- 61/70 • specially adapted for change-speed gearing in group arrangement, i.e. with separate change-speed gear trains arranged in series, e.g. range or overdrive-type gearing arrangements [2006.01]
- 63/00 Control outputs to change-speed- or reversing-gearings for conveying rotary motion [5, 2006.01]**
- 63/02 • Final output mechanisms therefor; Actuating means for the final output mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- 63/04 • • a single final output mechanism being moved by a single final actuating mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/06 • • • the final output mechanism having an indefinite number of positions [5, 2006.01]
- 63/08 • • Multiple final output mechanisms being moved by a single common final actuating mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/10 • • • the final actuating mechanism having a series of independent ways of movement, each way of movement being associated with only one final output mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/12 • • • • two or more ways of movement occurring simultaneously [5, 2006.01]
- 63/14 • • • the final output mechanisms being successively actuated by repeated movement of the final actuating mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/16 • • • the final output mechanisms being successively actuated by progressive movement of the final actuating mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/18 • • • • the final actuating mechanism comprising cams [5, 2006.01]
- 63/20 • • • with preselection and subsequent movement of each final output mechanism by movement of the final actuating mechanism in two different ways, e.g. guided by a shift gate [5, 2006.01]
- 63/22 • • • • the final output mechanisms being simultaneously moved by the final actuating mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/24 • • each of the final output mechanisms being moved by only one of the various final actuating mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- 63/26 • • • some of the movements of the final output mechanisms being caused by another final output mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/28 • • two or more final actuating mechanisms moving the same final output mechanism [5, 2006.01]
- 63/30 • • Constructional features of the final output mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- 63/32 • • • Gear shifter yokes [5, 2006.01]
- 63/34 • • • Locking or disabling mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- 63/36 • • • • Interlocking devices [5, 2006.01]
- 63/38 • • • Detents [5, 2006.01]
- 63/40 • comprising signals other than signals for actuating the final output mechanisms [5, 2006.01]
- 63/42 • • Ratio indicator devices [5, 2006.01]
- 63/44 • • Signals to the control unit of auxiliary gearing [5, 2006.01]
- 63/46 • • Signals to a clutch outside the gearbox [5, 2006.01]
- 63/48 • • Signals to a parking brake [5, 2006.01]
- 63/50 • • Signals to an engine or motor [7, 2006.01]

## F16J PISTONS; CYLINDERS; PRESSURE VESSELS IN GENERAL; SEALINGS

### Note(s)

Attention is drawn to the following places:

- A47J 27/08.....Pressure cookers
- E04B 1/68.....Sealing building joints
- E05C 9/00.....Multi-point fastening of wings in general
- F01B.....Machines or engines in general or of reciprocating type, e.g. cylinders peculiar to steam engines
- F01B 31/28
- F02F 1/00.....Cylinders for combustion engines
- F02F 3/00.....Pistons for combustion engines
- F04D 29/08.....Sealings of non-positive displacement pumps
- F17B 1/04.....Sealing devices for sliding parts of gas holders of variable capacity
- F28F 9/04.....Arrangements for sealing elements into header boxes or end plates of heat-exchangers.

**Subclass index**

PISTONS, TRUNK PISTONS, OR PLUNGERS; PISTON-RODS.....	1/00, 7/00
DIAPHRAGMS, BELLOWS, BELLOWS PISTONS; PISTON-RINGS.....	3/00, 9/00
CYLINDERS, HOLLOW BODIES.....	10/00
PRESSURE VESSELS; COVERS.....	12/00, 13/00
SEALINGS.....	15/00

- 
- 1/00 Pistons; Trunk pistons; Plungers** (bellows pistons F16J 3/06; piston-rings or seats therefor F16J 9/00; rotary pistons, e.g. for "Wankel" type engines, F01C; specific for combustion engines, i.e. constructed to withstand high temperature or modified for guiding, igniting, vaporising, or otherwise treating the charge, F02F; pistons specially adapted for reciprocating-piston liquid engines F03C 1/28; for pumps F04B; floats F16K 33/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 1/01 • characterised by the use of particular materials (F16J 1/02 takes precedence) **[3, 2006.01]**
  - 1/02 • Bearing surfaces **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/04 • Resilient guiding parts, e.g. skirts, particularly for trunk pistons **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/06 • • with separate expansion members; Expansion members **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/08 • Constructional features providing for lubrication **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/09 • with means for guiding fluids (F16J 1/08 takes precedence) **[3, 2006.01]**
  - 1/10 • Connection to driving members **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/12 • • with piston-rods, i.e. rigid connections **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/14 • • with connecting-rods, i.e. pivotal connections **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/16 • • • with gudgeon-pin; Gudgeon-pins **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/18 • • • • Securing of gudgeon-pins **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/20 • • • with rolling contact, other than in ball or roller bearings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/22 • • • with universal joint, e.g. ball-joint **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 1/24 • • designed to give the piston some rotary movement about its axis **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/00 Diaphragms; Bellows; Bellows pistons** (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00; bellows or the like used in instruments G12B 1/04; diaphragms for electromechanical transducers H04R 7/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 3/02 • Diaphragms **[2, 2006.01]**
  - 3/04 • Bellows **[2, 2006.01]**
  - 3/06 • Bellows pistons **[2, 2006.01]**
- 7/00 Piston-rods, i.e. rods rigidly connected to the piston** (connecting-rods or like links pivoted at both ends F16C 7/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 9/00 Piston-rings, seats therefor; Ring sealings of similar construction in general** (other sealings between pistons and cylinders F16J 3/06, F16J 15/16; tools for mounting or removing piston-rings or the like B25B; piston sealing arrangements on brake master cylinders B60T 11/236) **[1, 2, 5, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • L-section rings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/04 • Helical rings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/06 • using separate springs expanding the rings; Springs therefor **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/08 • with expansion obtained by pressure of the medium **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/10 • • Special members for adjusting the rings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/12 • Details **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/14 • • • Joint-closures **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/16 • • • • obtained by stacking of rings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/18 • • • • with separate bridge-elements **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/20 • • Rings with special cross-section (L-section rings F16J 9/02); Oil-scraping rings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/22 • • Rings for preventing wear of grooves or like seatings **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/24 • • Members preventing rotation of rings in grooves **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 9/26 • characterised by the use of particular materials **[3, 2006.01]**
  - 9/28 • • of non-metals **[3, 2006.01]**
- 10/00 Engine or like cylinders** (pressure vessels in general F16J 12/00; cylinders for engines or other apparatus of particular kinds, *see* the appropriate subclasses, e.g. for combustion engines F02F); **Features of hollow, e.g. cylindrical, bodies in general** **[3, 2006.01]**
- 10/02 • Cylinders designed to receive moving pistons or plungers **[3, 2006.01]**
  - 10/04 • • Running faces; Liners **[3, 2006.01]**
- 12/00 Pressure vessels in general** (covers therefor F16J 13/00; for particular applications, *see* the relevant subclasses, e.g. B01J, F17C, G21C) **[3, 2006.01]**
- 13/00 Covers or similar closure members for pressure vessels in general** (for engine or like cylinders F16J 10/00; sealings F16J 15/02; covers for box-like containers B65D 43/00; devices for securing or retaining closure members B65D 45/00; closures for containers not otherwise provided for B65D 51/00; manholes, covers for large containers B65D 90/10; gates or closures for large containers B65D 90/54; for vessels for containing or storing compressed, liquefied or solidified gases F17C 13/06; steam boilers F22B) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/02 • Detachable closure members; Means for tightening closures (F16J 13/16, F16J 13/22 take precedence) **[1, 3, 2006.01]**
  - 13/04 • • attached with a bridge member **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/06 • • attached only by clamps along the circumference **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/08 • • attached by one or more members actuated to project behind a part or parts of the frame (similar constructions for doors or windows E05C 9/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/10 • • attached by means of a divided ring **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/12 • • attached by wedging action by means of screw-thread, interrupted screw-thread, bayonet closure, or the like **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/14 • • attached exclusively by spring action or elastic action **[1, 2006.01]**
  - 13/16 • Pivoted closures (F16J 13/22 takes precedence) **[1, 3, 2006.01]**
  - 13/18 • • pivoted directly on the frame **[1, 2006.01]**

- 13/20 • • mounted by mobile fastening on swinging arms **[1, 2006.01]**
- 13/22 • with movement parallel to the plane of the opening **[3, 2006.01]**
- 13/24 • with safety devices, e.g. to prevent opening prior to pressure release **[3, 2006.01]**
- 15/00 Sealings [1, 5, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • between relatively-stationary surfaces (F16J 15/46, F16J 15/48 take precedence) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/04 • • without packing between the surfaces, e.g. with ground surfaces, with cutting edge **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/06 • • with solid packing compressed between sealing surfaces **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/08 • • • with exclusively metal packing **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/10 • • • with non-metallic packing **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/12 • • • • with metal reinforcement or covering **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/14 • • by means of granular or plastic material, or fluid **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/16 • between relatively-moving surfaces (F16J 15/50, F16J 15/52 take precedence; bellows pistons F16J 3/06; piston-rings or ring sealings of similar construction F16J 9/00) **[1, 2, 2006.01]**
- 15/18 • • with stuffing-boxes for elastic or plastic packings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/20 • • • Packing materials therefor **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/22 • • • • shaped as strands, ropes, threads, ribbons, or the like **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/24 • • • with radially or tangentially compressed packing **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/26 • • with stuffing-boxes for rigid sealing rings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/28 • • • with sealing rings made of metal **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/30 • • • with sealing rings made of carbon **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/32 • • with elastic sealings, e.g. O-rings **[1, 2006.01, 2016.01]**
- 15/3204 • • • with at least one lip **[2016.01]**
- 15/3208 • • • • provided with tension elements, e.g. elastic rings **[2016.01]**
- 15/3212 • • • • • with metal springs **[2016.01]**
- 15/3216 • • • • supported in a direction parallel to the surfaces **[2016.01]**
- 15/322 • • • • supported in a direction perpendicular to the surfaces **[2016.01]**
- 15/3224 • • • • capable of accommodating changes in distances or misalignment between the surfaces, e.g. able to compensate for defaults of eccentricity or angular deviations **[2016.01]**
- 15/3228 • • • • formed by deforming a flat ring **[2016.01]**
- 15/3232 • • • • having two or more lips **[2016.01]**
- 15/3236 • • • • • with at least one lip for each surface, e.g. U-cup packings **[2016.01]**
- 15/324 • • • Arrangements for lubrication or cooling of the sealing itself **[2016.01]**
- 15/3244 • • • with hydrodynamic pumping action **[2016.01]**
- 15/3248 • • • provided with casings or supports **[2016.01]**
- 15/3252 • • • • with rigid casings or supports **[2016.01]**
- 15/3256 • • • • • comprising two casing or support elements, one attached to each surface, e.g. cartridge or cassette seals **[2016.01]**
- 15/326 • • • • • with means for detecting or measuring relative rotation of the two elements **[2016.01]**
- 15/3264 • • • • • the elements being separable from each other **[2016.01]**
- 15/3268 • • • Mounting of sealing rings **[2016.01]**
- 15/3272 • • • • the rings having a break or opening, e.g. to enable mounting on a shaft otherwise than from a shaft end **[2016.01]**
- 15/3276 • • • • with additional static sealing between the sealing, or its casing or support, and the surface on which it is mounted **[2016.01]**
- 15/328 • • • Manufacturing methods specially adapted for elastic sealings (moulding B29C) **[2016.01]**
- 15/3284 • • • characterised by their structure; Selection of materials **[2016.01]**
- 15/3288 • • • • Filamentary structures, e.g. brush seals **[2016.01]**
- 15/3292 • • • • Lamellar structures **[2016.01]**
- 15/3296 • • • • Arrangements for monitoring the condition or operation of elastic sealings (F16J 15/326 takes precedence); Arrangements for control of elastic sealings, e.g. of their geometry or stiffness **[2016.01]**
- 15/34 • • with slip-ring pressed against a more or less radial face on one member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/36 • • • connected by a diaphragm to the other member **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/38 • • • sealed by a packing **[1, 2, 2006.01]**
- 15/40 • • • by means of fluid **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/42 • • • kept in sealing position by centrifugal force **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/43 • • • kept in sealing position by magnetic force **[6, 2006.01]**
- 15/44 • Free-space packings **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/447 • • Labyrinth packings **[3, 2006.01]**
- 15/453 • • • characterised by the use of particular materials **[3, 2006.01]**
- 15/46 • with packing ring expanded or pressed into place by fluid pressure, e.g. inflatable packings (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00; specially adapted for tube connections F16L) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/48 • • influenced by the pressure within the member to be sealed **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/50 • between relatively-movable members, by means of a sealing without relatively-moving surfaces, e.g. fluid-tight sealings for transmitting motion through a wall **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/52 • • by means of sealing bellows or diaphragms (connection of valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00) **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/53 • using magnetic means **[6, 2006.01]**
- 15/54 • Other sealings for rotating shafts **[1, 2006.01]**
- 15/56 • Other sealings for reciprocating rods **[1, 2006.01]**

**Note(s) [2, 5, 7, 2006.01]**

1. Attention is drawn to the Notes following the titles of class B81 and subclass B81B relating to "microstructural devices" and "microstructural systems".
2. Attention is drawn to Note (2) following the title of subclass G05D and also the subdivisions of that subclass, according to which pressure regulators and flow regulators, e.g. flow regulating valves with pressure compensator, even with the whole regulating system contained in a valve, operating with or without auxiliary power, are covered by groups G05D 16/00 or G05D 7/00, respectively. However, details of the valve parts, *per se*, are classified in the appropriate groups of this subclass.
3. Attention is drawn to the following places:
  - A47J 27/09.....Safety devices for pressure cookers
  - A47J 31/46.....Dispensing spouts, drain valves or like beverage-making apparatus
  - A61B 5/0235.....Valves specially adapted for measuring pressure in heart or blood vessels
  - A61F 2/24.....Heart valves
  - A61M 16/20.....Valves specially adapted for medical respiratory devices
  - A61M 39/00.....Tube connectors, tube couplings, valves or branch units specially adapted for medical use in general
  - A62B 9/02.....Valves for respiratory apparatus
  - A62B 18/10.....Valves for breathing masks or helmets
  - A62C.....Fire extinguishers
  - B05B.....Nozzles, spray heads or other discharge apparatus for spraying or atomising
  - B60C 29/00.....Arrangements of tyre-inflating valves relative to tyres or wheel rims; Connection of valves to wheel rims, tyres or other inflatable elastic bodies
  - B60G 17/048.....Valves specially adapted for adjusting vehicle fluid-spring characteristics
  - B60T.....Valves specially adapted for vehicle brake control systems
  - B62D 5/08.....Vehicle power-assisted steering characterised by the type of valve used
  - B63B 7/00, B63C 9/00.....Arrangement of inflating valves for floatable live-saving equipment
  - B65D 47/04.....Container closures with discharging valves
  - B65D 83/28, B65D 83/44.....Nozzles or valves specially adapted for aerosol containers
  - B65D 90/32.....Safety valves for large containers
  - B65D 90/54.....Gates or closures on large containers
  - B67C 3/28.....Flow control devices for bottling liquids
  - B67D.....Dispensing, delivering or transferring liquids
  - E02B 8/00.....Details, e.g. valves, of barrages or weirs
  - E02B 13/02.....Closures for irrigation conduits
  - E03B 9/02.....Arrangement of valves in hydrants
  - E03D.....Flushing valves for water-closets or urinals
  - E05F 3/12.....Valve arrangement in door closers
  - E21B 21/10.....Valve arrangements in drilling-fluid circulation systems
  - E21B 34/00.....Valve arrangements for boreholes or wells
  - F01B 25/10.....Working-fluid valves for controlling machines or engines in general or of positive-displacement type
  - F01D 17/10.....Final actuators for controlling non-positive displacement machines or engines
  - F01L.....Cyclically operated valves for machines or engines
  - F02D 9/08.....Throttle valves for controlling combustion engines
  - F02K 9/58.....Propellant feed valves for rocket-engines
  - F02M.....Carburettors, fuel injection
  - F02M 59/46.....Valves for fuel injection pumps
  - F04.....Pumps
  - F16F 9/34.....Valves for shock absorbers
  - F16L 29/00, F16L 37/28.....Pipe joints or quick-acting couplings with fluid cut-off means
  - F16L 55/00.....Arrangement of valves in pipes
  - F16L 55/055.....Valves specially adapted to prevent or minimise the effect of water hammer
  - F16L 55/46.....Launching devices for pigs or moles
  - F16N 23/00.....Check valves for lubrication systems
  - F17C 13/04.....Arrangement of valves in pressure vessels
  - F22B 37/44.....Arrangement of safety valves on steam boilers
  - F22D 5/34.....Application of valves to automatic water-feed in boiler
  - F23L 13/00.....Valves for air supply control to burners
  - F23Q 2/173.....Valves for lighters with gaseous fuel and adjustable flame
  - F24C 3/12, F24C 5/16.....Arrangement of valves on stoves or ranges
  - F24F.....Air conditioning; Ventilation
  - F25B 41/20.....Disposition of fluid circulation valves in refrigeration machines
  - G05D.....Controlling non-electric variables
  - G10B 3/06.....Valves for organs
  - G10D 9/04.....Valves for other wind-actuated musical instruments.

**Subclass index**

## CONSTRUCTIONAL TYPES

Lift-valves, gate valves or sliding valves, taps, diaphragm cut-off apparatus.....1/00-7/00

Multiple-way valves.....	11/00
Other constructional types of cut-off apparatus, arrangements for cutting off.....	13/00
<b>FUNCTIONAL TYPES</b>	
Check valves; safety or equalising valves; arrangements for mixing fluids.....	15/00, 17/00, 11/00
Fluid-delivery valves; valves for preventing drip from nozzles.....	21/00, 23/00
For venting or aerating enclosures.....	24/00
<b>DETAILS OR GENERAL MEANS</b>	
Handling or control.....	29/00, 31/00, 39/00, 43/00
Auxiliary means.....	47/00, 49/00
Safety.....	35/00, 37/00
Details: contact between valve members and seats, housings, floats, sealings.....	25/00, 27/00, 33/00, 41/00
Other details.....	51/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

<b>Constructional types</b>	1/38	• • • • of conical shape [1, 2006.01]
	1/40	• • • • of helical shape [1, 2006.01]
<b>Note(s) [2]</b>	1/42	• • • Valve seats (for double-seat valves F16K 1/44) [1, 2006.01]
In groups F16K 1/00-F16K 13/00, an initial seal breaking or final sealing movement which is different from the opening or closing movement of the valve is not considered in determining the movement to be classified.	1/44	• • • Details of seats or valve members of double-seat valves [1, 2006.01]
	1/46	• • • Attachment of sealing rings [1, 2006.01]
	1/48	• • Attaching valve members to valve-spindles [1, 4, 2006.01]
<b>1/00 Lift valves, i.e. cut-off apparatus with closure members having at least a component of their opening and closing motion perpendicular to the closing faces (diaphragm valves F16K 7/00) [1, 2006.01]</b>	1/50	• • Preventing rotation of valve members [1, 2006.01]
	1/52	• • Means for additional adjustment of the rate of flow [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/02</b>	1/54	• • Arrangements for modifying the way in which the rate of flow varies during the actuation of the valve [1, 2006.01]
• with screw-spindle (F16K 1/12-F16K 1/28 take precedence; actuating mechanisms with screw-spindles F16K 31/50) [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/04</b>	<b>3/00</b>	<b>Gate valves or sliding valves, i.e. cut-off apparatus with closing members having a sliding movement along the seat for opening and closing (F16K 5/00 takes precedence; in barrages or weirs E02B 8/04) [1, 2006.01]</b>
• • with a cut-off member rigid with the spindle, e.g. main valves [1, 2006.01]	3/02	• with flat sealing faces; Packings therefor [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/06</b>	3/03	• • with a closure member in the form of an iris-diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
• • Special arrangements for improving the flow, e.g. special shape of passages or casings [1, 2006.01]	3/04	• • with pivoted closure members [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/08</b>	3/06	• • • in the form of closure plates arranged between supply and discharge passages (F16K 3/10 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
• • • in which the spindle is perpendicular to the general direction of flow [1, 2006.01]	3/08	• • • • with circular closure plates rotatable around their centres [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/10</b>	3/10	• • • with special arrangements for separating the sealing faces or for pressing them together [1, 2006.01]
• • • in which the spindle is inclined to the general direction of flow [1, 2006.01]	3/12	• • with wedge-shaped arrangements of sealing faces [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/12</b>	3/14	• • • with special arrangements for separating the sealing faces or for pressing them together [1, 2006.01]
• with streamlined valve member around which the fluid flows when the valve is opened [1, 2006.01]	3/16	• • with special arrangements for separating the sealing faces or for pressing them together (F16K 3/10, F16K 3/14 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/14</b>	3/18	• • • by movement of the closure members [1, 2006.01]
• with ball-shaped valve members (check valves F16K 15/04) [1, 2006.01]	3/20	• • • by movement of the seats [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/16</b>	3/22	• with sealing faces shaped as surfaces of solids of revolution (F16K 13/02 takes precedence; with resilient valve members F16K 3/28) [1, 2006.01]
• with pivoted closure members [1, 2006.01]	3/24	• • with cylindrical valve members [1, 2006.01]
<b>1/18</b>	3/26	• • • with fluid passages in the valve member [1, 2006.01]
• • with pivoted discs or flaps [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/20</b>		
• • • with axis of rotation arranged externally of valve member [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/22</b>		
• • • with axis of rotation crossing the valve member, e.g. butterfly valves [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/226</b>		
• • • • Shape or arrangement of the sealing [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/228</b>		
• • • • Movable sealing bodies [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/24</b>		
• with valve members that, on opening of the valve, are initially lifted from the seat and next are turned around an axis parallel to the seat [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/26</b>		
• • Shape or arrangement of the sealing [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/28</b>		
• • • Movable sealing bodies [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/30</b>		
• specially adapted for pressure containers [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/32</b>		
• Details (details of more general applicability F16K 25/00-F16K 51/00) [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/34</b>		
• • Cutting-off parts (F16K 1/06, F16K 1/12, F16K 1/14, F16K 1/26 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]		
<b>1/36</b>		
• • • Valve members (for double-seat valves F16K 1/44) [1, 2006.01]		

- 3/28 • with resilient valve members [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/30 • Details [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/312 • • Line blinds [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/314 • • Forms or constructions of slides; Attachment of the slide to the spindle [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/316 • • Guiding of the slide [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/32 • • Means for additional adjustment of the rate of flow [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/34 • • Arrangements for modifying the way in which the rate of flow varies during the actuation of the valve [1, 2006.01]
  - 3/36 • • Features relating to lubrication [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/00 Taps or cocks comprising only cut-off apparatus having at least one of the sealing faces shaped as a more or less complete surface of a solid of revolution, the opening and closing movement being predominantly rotary (taps of the lift-valve type F16K 1/00) [1, 2006.01]**
  - 5/02 • with plugs having conical surfaces; Packings therefor [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/04 • with plugs having cylindrical surfaces; Packings therefor [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/06 • with plugs having spherical surfaces; Packings therefor [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/08 • Details [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/10 • • Means for additional adjustment of the rate of flow [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/12 • • Arrangements for modifying the way in which the rate of flow varies during the actuation of the valve [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/14 • • Special arrangements for separating the sealing faces or for pressing them together [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/16 • • • for plugs with conical surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/18 • • • for plugs with cylindrical surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/20 • • • for plugs with spherical surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 5/22 • • Features relating to lubrication [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/00 Diaphragm cut-off apparatus, e.g. with a member deformed, but not moved bodily, to close the passage (container gates or closures operating by deformation of flexible walls B65D 90/56; means for plugging pipes or hoses F16L 55/10) [1, 2006.01]**
  - 7/02 • with tubular diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/04 • • constrictable by external radial force [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/06 • • • by means of a screw-spindle, cam, or other mechanical means [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/07 • • • by means of fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/08 • • constrictable by twisting [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/10 • with inflatable member [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/12 • with flat, dished, or bowl-shaped diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/14 • • arranged to be deformed against a flat seat [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/16 • • • the diaphragm being mechanically actuated, e.g. by screw-spindle or cam [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/17 • • • the diaphragm being actuated by fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/18 • with diaphragm secured at one side only, e.g. to be laid on the seat by rolling action [1, 2006.01]
  - 7/20 • with a compressible solid closure member [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/00 Multiple-way valves, e.g. mixing valves; Pipe fittings incorporating such valves; Arrangement of valves and flow lines specially adapted for mixing fluid [1, 4, 2006.01]**
  - 11/02 • with all movable sealing faces moving as one unit [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/04 • • comprising only lift valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/044 • • • with movable valve members positioned between valve seats [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/048 • • • with valve seats positioned between movable valve members [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/052 • • • with pivoted closure members, e.g. butterfly valves [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/056 • • • with ball-shaped valve members [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/06 • • comprising only sliding valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/065 • • • with linearly sliding closure members [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/07 • • • with cylindrical slides [1, 4, 2006.01]
  - 11/072 • • • with pivoted closure members [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/074 • • • with flat sealing faces [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/076 • • • with sealing faces shaped as surfaces of solids of revolution [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/078 • • • with pivoted and linearly movable closure members [4, 2006.01]
  - 11/08 • • comprising only taps or cocks [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/083 • • • with tapered plug [2, 2006.01]
  - 11/085 • • • with cylindrical plug [2, 2006.01]
  - 11/087 • • • with spherical plug [2, 2006.01]
  - 11/10 • with two or more closure members not moving as a unit [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/12 • • with one plug turning in another [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/14 • • operated by one actuating member, e.g. a handle (with one plug turning in another F16K 11/12) [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/16 • • • which only slides, or only turns, or only swings in one plane [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/18 • • • with separate operating movements for separate closure members [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/20 • • operated by separate actuating members (with one plug turning in another F16K 11/12) [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/22 • • • with an actuating member for each valve, e.g. interconnected to form multiple-way valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 11/24 • • • with an electromagnetically-operated valve, e.g. for washing machines [1, 2006.01]
  - 13/00 Other constructional types of cut-off apparatus (means for plugging pipes or hoses F16L 55/10); Arrangements for cutting-off [1, 4, 2006.01]**
  - 13/02 • with both sealing faces shaped as small segments of a cylinder and the moving member pivotally mounted [1, 2006.01]
  - 13/08 • Arrangements for cutting-off [4, 2006.01]
  - 13/10 • • by means of liquid or granular medium [4, 2006.01]
- Functional types**
- 15/00 Check valves (valves specially adapted for inflatable balls A63B 41/00) [1, 2006.01]**
  - 15/02 • with guided rigid valve members [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/03 • with a hinged closure member [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/04 • • shaped as balls [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/06 • • with guided stems [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/08 • • shaped as rings [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/10 • • • integral with, or rigidly fixed to, a common valve plate [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/12 • • • Springs for ring valves [1, 3, 2006.01]
  - 15/14 • with flexible valve members [1, 2006.01]

- 15/16 • • with tongue-shaped laminae [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/18 • with actuating mechanism; Combined check valves and actuated valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 15/20 • specially designed for inflatable bodies, e.g. tyres (connecting valves to inflatable elastic bodies B60C 29/00) [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/00 Safety valves; Equalising valves** (pressure relief devices for aerosol containers B65D 83/70) [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/02 • opening on surplus pressure on one side; closing on insufficient pressure on one side (check valves F16K 15/00) [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/04 • • spring-loaded [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/06 • • • with special arrangements for adjusting the opening pressure [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/08 • • • with special arrangements for providing a large discharge passage [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/10 • • • with auxiliary valve for fluid operation of the main valve [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/12 • • weight-loaded [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/14 • • with fracturing member [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/16 • • • with fracturing diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/164 • • and remaining closed after return of the normal pressure [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/168 • • combined with manually-controlled valves, e.g. a valve combined with a safety valve [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/18 • opening on surplus pressure on either side [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/19 • • Equalising valves predominantly for tanks [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/192 • • • with closure member in the form of a movable liquid column [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/194 • • • weight-loaded [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/196 • • • spring-loaded [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/20 • Excess-flow valves (actuated in consequence of shock or similar extraneous influence F16K 17/36) [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/22 • • actuated by the difference of pressure between two places in the flow line [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/24 • • • acting directly on the cutting-off member [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/26 • • • • operating in either direction [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/28 • • • • operating in one direction only [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/30 • • • • • spring-loaded [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/32 • • • acting on a servo-mechanism or on a catch-releasing mechanism [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/34 • • in which the flow-energy of the flowing medium actuates the closing mechanism [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/36 • actuated in consequence of extraneous circumstances, e.g. shock, change of position [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/38 • • of excessive temperature [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/40 • with fracturing member, e.g. fracturing diaphragm, fusible joint (valves with fracturing member opening on surplus pressure on one side F16K 17/14) [1, 2006.01]
  - 17/42 • Valves preventing penetration of air in the outlet of containers for liquids [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/00 Fluid-delivery valves** (specially adapted for aerosol containers B65D 83/44; for liquid handling B67D; for flushing devices for water-closets or the like E03D) [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/02 • providing a continuous small flow [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/04 • Self-closing valves, i.e. closing automatically after operation [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/06 • • in which the closing movement, either retarded or not, starts immediately after opening [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/08 • • • with ball-shaped closing members [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/10 • • • with hydraulic brake cylinder acting on the closure member [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/12 • • • with hydraulically-operated opening means; with arrangements for pressure relief before opening [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/14 • • with special means for preventing the self-closing [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/16 • • closing after a predetermined quantity of fluid has been delivered (F16K 21/10 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/18 • • closed when a rising liquid reaches a predetermined level (float-actuated valves F16K 31/18) [1, 2006.01]
  - 21/20 • • • by means making use of air-suction through an opening closed by the rising liquid [1, 2006.01]
  - 23/00 Valves for preventing drip from nozzles [1, 2006.01]**
  - 24/00 Devices, e.g. valves, for venting or aerating enclosures** (equalising valves F16K 17/00; arrangement or mounting in pipes or pipe systems F16L 55/07; venting or aerating as an additional function of steam traps or like apparatus F16T; ventilation of rooms, vehicles, see the appropriate subclass, e.g. F24F) [2, 2006.01]
  - 24/02 • the enclosure being itself a valve, tap, or cock [2, 2006.01]
  - 24/04 • for venting only (F16K 24/02 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
  - 24/06 • for aerating only (F16K 24/02 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- Details**
- Note(s)**
- Details not provided for in groups F16K 25/00-F16K 51/00 are classified in groups F16K 1/00-F16K 24/00.
- 25/00 Details relating to contact between valve members and seats** (movement of valve members other than for opening and closing F16K 29/00) [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/02 • Arrangements using fluid issuing from valve members or seats [1, 2006.01]
  - 25/04 • Arrangements for preventing erosion, not otherwise provided for [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/00 Construction of housings** (methods for welding housings B23K); **Use of materials therefor [1, 2006.01]**
  - 27/02 • of lift valves (for reducing the flow resistance of screw-spindle lift-valves F16K 1/06) [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/04 • of sliding valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/06 • of taps or cocks [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/07 • of cutting-off parts of tanks, e.g. tank-cars [4, 2006.01]
  - 27/08 • Guiding yokes for spindles; Means for closing housings; Dust caps, e.g. for tyre valves [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/10 • Welded housings [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/12 • Covers for housings [1, 2006.01]
  - 29/00 Arrangements for movement of valve members other than for opening or closing the valve, e.g. for grinding-in, for preventing sticking [1, 2006.01]**
  - 29/02 • providing for continuous motion [1, 2006.01]
  - 31/00 Operating means; Releasing devices [1, 2006.01]**

## F16K

- 31/02 • electric; magnetic [1, 2006.01]
- 31/04 • • using a motor [1, 2006.01]
- 31/05 • • • specially adapted for operating hand-operated valves or for combined motor and hand operation [1, 2006.01]
- 31/06 • • using a magnet [1, 2006.01]
- 31/08 • • • using a permanent magnet [1, 2006.01]
- 31/10 • • • with additional mechanism between armature and closure member [1, 2006.01]
- 31/11 • • • • with additional hand operating means [2, 2006.01]
- 31/12 • actuated by fluid (fluid-actuated check valves F16K 15/00; fluid-actuated safety valves F16K 17/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/122 • • the fluid acting on a piston (F16K 31/143, F16K 31/163, F16K 31/363, F16K 31/383 take precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/124 • • • servo actuated [2, 2006.01]
- 31/126 • • the fluid acting on a diaphragm, bellows, or the like (F16K 31/145, F16K 31/165, F16K 31/365, F16K 31/385 take precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 31/128 • • • servo actuated [2, 2006.01]
- 31/14 • • for mounting on, or in combination with, hand-actuated valves [1, 2006.01]
- 31/143 • • • the fluid acting on a piston [1, 2006.01]
- 31/145 • • • the fluid acting on a diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
- 31/16 • • with a mechanism, other than pulling- or pushing-rod, between fluid motor and closure member (with float F16K 31/18) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/163 • • • the fluid acting on a piston [1, 2006.01]
- 31/165 • • • the fluid acting on a diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
- 31/18 • • actuated by a float (floats F16K 33/00; float-actuated valves in steam-traps F16T 1/20, in boilers F22D 5/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/20 • • • actuating a lift valve [1, 2006.01]
- 31/22 • • • • with the float rigidly connected to the valve [1, 2006.01]
- 31/24 • • • • with a transmission with parts linked together from a single float to a single valve [1, 2006.01]
- 31/26 • • • • • with the valve guided for rectilinear movement and the float attached to a pivoted arm [1, 2006.01]
- 31/28 • • • • with two or more floats actuating one valve [1, 2006.01]
- 31/30 • • • actuating a gate valve or sliding valve [1, 2006.01]
- 31/32 • • • actuating a tap or cock [1, 2006.01]
- 31/34 • • • acting on pilot valve controlling the cut-off apparatus [1, 2006.01]
- 31/36 • • in which fluid from the conduit is constantly supplied to the fluid motor [1, 2006.01]
- 31/363 • • • the fluid acting on a piston (F16K 31/38 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/365 • • • the fluid acting on a diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
- 31/38 • • • in which the fluid works directly on both sides of the fluid motor, one side being connected by means of a restricted passage and the motor being actuated by operating a discharge from that side (F16K 31/40 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/383 • • • the fluid acting on a piston [1, 2006.01]
- 31/385 • • • the fluid acting on a diaphragm [1, 2006.01]
- 31/40 • • • with electrically-actuated member in the discharge of the motor [1, 2006.01]
- 31/42 • • • by means of electrically-actuated members in the supply or discharge conduits of the fluid motor (F16K 31/40 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/44 • Mechanical actuating means [1, 2006.01]
- 31/46 • • for remote operation [1, 2006.01]
- 31/48 • • actuated by mechanical timing-device, e.g. with dash-pot (self-closing valves F16K 21/16) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/50 • • with screw-spindle [1, 2006.01]
- 31/52 • • with crank, eccentric, or cam [1, 2006.01]
- 31/524 • • • with a cam [1, 2006.01]
- 31/528 • • • with pin and slot [1, 2006.01]
- 31/53 • • with toothed gearing [1, 2006.01]
- 31/54 • • • with pinion and rack [1, 2006.01]
- 31/56 • • without stable intermediate position, e.g. with snap action [1, 2006.01]
- 31/58 • • comprising a movable discharge-nozzle [1, 2006.01]
- 31/60 • • Handles [1, 2006.01]
- 31/62 • • Pedals or like operating members, e.g. actuated by knee or hip [1, 2006.01]
- 31/64 • responsive to temperature variation (dependant on excessive temperature F16K 17/38; control of fire-fighting equipment A62C 37/00; devices for preventing bursting of water pipes by freezing E03B 7/10) [4, 2006.01]
- 31/66 • • electrically or magnetically actuated, e.g. by magnets with variable magnetic characteristics [4, 2006.01]
- 31/68 • • actuated by fluid pressure or volumetric variation in a confined chamber [4, 2006.01]
- 31/70 • • mechanically actuated, e.g. by a bimetallic strip [4, 2006.01]
- 31/72 • Operating means or releasing devices specifically adapted to enhance the speed of valve response [4, 2006.01]
- 33/00 Floats for actuation of valves or other apparatus [1, 2006.01]**
- 35/00 Means to prevent accidental or unauthorised actuation [1, 2006.01]**
- 35/02 • to be locked or disconnected by means of a push or pull [1, 2006.01]
- 35/04 • yieldingly resisting the actuation [1, 2006.01]
- 35/06 • using a removable actuating or locking member, e.g. a key (F16K 35/10, F16K 35/12 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 35/08 • requiring setting according to a code, e.g. permutation locks [1, 2006.01]
- 35/10 • with locking caps or locking bars [1, 2006.01]
- 35/12 • with sealing wire [1, 2006.01]
- 35/14 • interlocking two or more valves [1, 2006.01]
- 35/16 • with locking member actuated by magnet [1, 2006.01]
- 37/00 Special means in or on valves or other cut-off apparatus for indicating or recording operation thereof, or for enabling an alarm to be given [1, 2006.01]**
- 39/00 Devices for relieving the pressure on the sealing faces [1, 2006.01]**
- 39/02 • for lift valves [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • for sliding valves [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • for taps or cocks [1, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Spindle sealings [1, 2006.01]**

41/02	• with stuffing-box [1, 2006.01]	47/06	• • with a throttle in the form of a helical channel [1, 2006.01]
41/04	• • with at least one ring of rubber or like material between spindle and housing [1, 2006.01]	47/08	• for decreasing pressure and having a throttling member separate from the closure member [1, 2006.01]
41/06	• • with at least one ring attached to both spindle and housing [1, 2006.01]	47/10	• • in which the medium in one direction must flow through the throttling channel, and in the other direction may flow through a much wider channel parallel to the throttling channel [1, 2006.01]
41/08	• • with at least one ring provided with axially-protruding peripheral closing-lip [1, 2006.01]	47/12	• • the throttling channel being of helical form [1, 2006.01]
41/10	• with diaphragm, e.g. shaped as bellows or tube [1, 2006.01]	47/14	• • the throttling member being a perforated membrane [1, 2006.01]
41/12	• • with approximately flat diaphragm [1, 2006.01]	47/16	• • the throttling member being a cone [1, 2006.01]
41/14	• with conical flange on the spindle which co-operates with a conical surface in the housing [1, 2006.01]	<b>49/00</b>	<b>Means in or on valves for heating or cooling</b> (for pipes F16L 53/00; thermal insulation in connection with pipes or pipe systems F16L 59/16) [1, 2006.01]
41/16	• with a flange on the spindle which rests on a sealing ring [1, 2006.01]	<b>51/00</b>	<b>Other details not peculiar to particular types of valves or cut-off apparatus</b> [1, 2006.01]
41/18	• • sealing only when the closure member is in the opened position [1, 2006.01]	51/02	• specially adapted for high-vacuum installations [2, 2006.01]
<b>43/00</b>	<b>Auxiliary closure means in valves, which in case of repair, e.g. rewashing, of the valve, can take over the function of the normal closure means; Devices for temporary replacement of parts of valves for the same purpose</b> [1, 2006.01]	<hr/>	
<b>47/00</b>	<b>Means in valves for absorbing fluid energy</b> (for pipes F16L 55/00) [1, 2006.01]	<b>99/00</b>	<b>Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass</b> [2006.01]
47/02	• for preventing water-hammer or noise [1, 2006.01]		
47/04	• for decreasing pressure, the throttle being incorporated in the closure member [1, 2006.01]		

**F16L PIPES; JOINTS OR FITTINGS FOR PIPES; SUPPORTS FOR PIPES, CABLES OR PROTECTIVE TUBING; MEANS FOR THERMAL INSULATION IN GENERAL**

**Note(s) [5, 7]**

- In this subclass, the following terms are used with the meanings indicated:
  - "pipe" means a conduit of closed cross-section, which is specially adapted to convey fluids, materials or objects;
  - "hose" means a pipe, as defined above, which has flexibility as an essential characteristic.
- Attention is drawn to the following places:
  - A61M 39/00.....Tube connectors, tube couplings or branch units, specially adapted for medical use
  - B05B 1/20.....Perforated pipes
  - B63B 35/03.....Pipe-laying vessels
  - B64D 39/04.....Adaptation of hose constructions for refuelling aircraft during flight
  - B67D 7/38.....Arrangements of hoses in apparatus for transferring liquids, e.g. fuel, from bulk to vehicles or portable containers
  - E01D 19/10.....Fastening of pipes or cables to bridges
  - E03B.....Water supply installations
  - E03D 11/17.....Means for connecting water-closet bowls to the flushing pipe
  - E03D 11/18.....Siphons for water-closets
  - E03F 3/04.....Pipes or fittings specially adapted to sewers
  - E04D 13/08.....Down pipes for roof drainage; Clamping means therefor
  - E04F 17/00.....Vertical ducts, channels in buildings, e.g. chimneys
  - E21F 1/04.....Air ducts for ventilation of mines or tunnels; Connections therefor
  - E21F 17/02.....Suspension devices for tubes or the like in mines or tunnels
  - F01N.....Gas flow silencers or exhaust apparatus for machines or engines
  - F16N 21/00.....Conduits, junctions for lubrication systems
  - F17C 3/02.....Thermal insulation of vessels not under pressure for storing liquified or solidified gases, e.g. Dewar flask
  - F22B 37/10.....Water tubes of steam boilers
  - F23J 13/04.....Joints, connections for chimneys or flues
  - F24H 9/12.....Connecting circulation pipes to heaters
  - F28F 9/04.....Arrangements for sealing elements into header boxes or end plates of heat-exchangers
  - G21C 15/22.....Structural association of coolant tubes with headers or other pipes in nuclear reactors
  - H02G 3/04.....Protective tubing or conduits for electric cables
  - H02G 3/30.....Installations of electric cables or lines on walls, floors or ceilings
  - H02G 3/36.....Installations of electric cables or lines in walls, floors or ceilings

**Subclass index**

LAYING OR RECLAIMING PIPES.....	1/00
SUPPORTING.....	3/00, 5/00, 7/00
PIPES.....	9/00, 11/00
PIPE JOINTS	
Constructional kinds	
non-disconnectable.....	13/00
screw-threaded.....	15/00
with separate joints: pressing member; sleeve or socket; flanged joints.....	19/00, 21/00, 23/00
bends or siphons.....	43/00
other joints.....	25/00
Functional kinds	
with self-tightening sealings.....	17/00
adjustable or allowing movement.....	27/00
with fluid cut-off means.....	29/00
of quick-acting type.....	37/00
for double-walled or multi-channel pipes.....	39/00
branching pipes, joining pipes to walls.....	41/00
special for hoses.....	31/00, 33/00, 35/00
special for pipes: of plastics; of brittle material.....	47/00, 49/00
PIPING UNITS	
Cleaning features.....	45/00
Compensation devices.....	51/00
Heating or cooling.....	53/00
Accessories.....	55/00
PROTECTION: AGAINST DAMAGE; CORROSION OR INCRUSTATION; THERMAL INSULATION. .	57/00, 58/00, 59/00

1/00	<b>Laying or reclaiming pipes; Repairing or joining pipes on or under water [1, 2, 5, 6, 2006.01]</b>	1/26	• Repairing or joining pipes on or under water [5, 2006.01]
1/024	• Laying or reclaiming pipes on land, e.g. above the ground (F16L 1/12 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]	3/00	<b>Supports for pipes, cables or protective tubing, e.g. hangers, holders, clamps, cleats, clips, brackets</b> (anchors for holding pipes on or under the ground F16L 1/06; noise absorbers in the form of specially adapted hangers or supports F16L 55/035; arrangements specially adapted for supporting insulated bodies F16L 59/12) [1, 5, 7, 2006.01]
1/026	• • in or on a frozen surface [6, 2006.01]	3/01	• for supporting or guiding the pipes, cables or protective tubing, between relatively movable points, e.g. movable channels [5, 2006.01]
1/028	• • in the ground (F16L 1/026 takes precedence) [5, 6, 2006.01]	3/015	• • using articulated- or supple-guiding elements [6, 2006.01]
1/032	• • • the pipes being continuous (F16L 1/038 takes precedence) [5, 6, 2006.01]	3/02	• partly surrounding the pipes, cables or protective tubing (bands or chains F16L 3/14) [1, 2006.01]
1/036	• • • the pipes being composed of sections of short length (F16L 1/038 takes precedence) [5, 6, 2006.01]	3/04	• • and pressing it against a wall or other support [1, 2006.01]
1/038	• • • the pipes being made <i>in situ</i> [6, 2006.01]	3/06	• • with supports for wires [1, 2006.01]
1/06	• • Accessories therefor, e.g. anchors [5, 2006.01]	3/08	• substantially surrounding the pipe, cable or protective tubing [1, 2006.01]
1/09	• • • for bringing two tubular members closer to each other [6, 2006.01]	3/10	• • divided, i.e. with two members engaging the pipe, cable or protective tubing [1, 2006.01]
1/10	• • • for aligning [5, 2006.01]	3/11	• • • and hanging from a pendant (F16L 3/14 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
1/11	• • • for the detection or protection of pipes in the ground [6, 2006.01]	3/12	• • comprising a member substantially surrounding the pipe, cable or protective tubing [1, 2006.01]
1/12	• Laying or reclaiming pipes on or under water [5, 2006.01]	3/123	• • • and extending along the attachment surface [5, 2006.01]
1/14	• • between the surface and the bottom [5, 2006.01]	3/127	• • • and extending away from the attachment surface [5, 2006.01]
1/15	• • • vertically [6, 2006.01]	3/13	• • • and engaging it by snap action [5, 2006.01]
1/16	• • on the bottom [5, 2006.01]	3/133	• • • and hanging from a pendant (F16L 3/14 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
1/18	• • • the pipes being S- or J-shaped and under tension during laying [5, 2006.01]	3/137	• • • and consisting of a flexible band [5, 2006.01]
1/19	• • • • the pipes being J-shaped [6, 2006.01]		
1/20	• • Accessories therefor, e.g. floats or weights [5, 2006.01]		
1/225	• • • Stingers [6, 2006.01]		
1/23	• • • Pipe tensioning apparatus [6, 2006.01]		
1/235	• • • Apparatus for controlling the pipe during laying [6, 2006.01]		
1/24	• • • Floats; Weights [5, 2006.01]		

- 3/14 • Hangers in the form of bands or chains [1, 2006.01]
- 3/16 • with special provision allowing movement of the pipe (F16L 3/01 takes precedence; supporting pipes or cables inside other pipes or sleeves F16L 7/00) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 3/18 • • allowing movement in axial direction [1, 2006.01]
- 3/20 • • allowing movement in transverse direction [1, 2006.01]
- 3/202 • • • the transverse movement being converted to a rotational movement (F16L 3/215 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 3/205 • • • having supporting springs [5, 2006.01]
- 3/21 • • • • providing constant supporting spring force [5, 2006.01]
- 3/215 • • • the movement being hydraulically or electrically controlled [5, 2006.01]
- 3/217 • • • • hydraulically [6, 2006.01]
- 3/22 • specially adapted for supporting a number of parallel pipes at intervals [1, 6, 2006.01]
- 3/223 • • each support having one transverse base for supporting the pipes (F16L 3/23, F16L 3/237 take precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 3/227 • • • each pipe being supported by a separate element fastened to the base [6, 2006.01]
- 3/23 • • for a bundle of pipes or a plurality of pipes placed side by side in contact with each other (F16L 3/237 takes precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 3/233 • • • by means of a flexible band [6, 2006.01]
- 3/237 • • for two pipes [6, 2006.01]
- 3/24 • with special member for attachment to profiled girders [1, 2006.01]
- 3/26 • specially adapted for supporting the pipes all along their length, e.g. pipe channels or ducts [6, 2006.01]
- 5/00 Devices for use where pipes, cables or protective tubing pass through walls or partitions** (installations of electric cables or lines through walls, floors or ceilings H02G 3/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 5/02 • Sealing [1, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [6]**
- Group F16L 5/14 takes precedence over groups F16L 5/04-F16L 5/12.
- 5/04 • • to form a firebreak device [6, 2006.01]
- 5/06 • • by means of a swivel nut compressing a ring or sleeve [6, 2006.01]
- 5/08 • • by means of axial screws compressing a ring or sleeve [6, 2006.01]
- 5/10 • • by using sealing rings or sleeves only [6, 2006.01]
- 5/12 • • the pipe being cut in two pieces [6, 2006.01]
- 5/14 • • for double-walled or multi-channel pipes [6, 2006.01]
- 7/00 Supporting pipes or cables inside other pipes or sleeves, e.g. for enabling pipes or cables to be inserted or withdrawn from under roads or railways without interruption of traffic** (sleeves for supporting pipes, cables or protective tubing, between relatively movable points F16L 3/01) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 7/02 • and sealing the pipes or cables inside the other pipes, cables or sleeves [6, 2006.01]
- Pipes**
- 9/00 Rigid pipes [1, 2006.01]**
- 9/01 • of wood (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [6, 2006.01]
- 9/02 • of metal (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • • Reinforced pipes [1, 2006.01]
- 9/06 • • Corrugated pipes [1, 2006.01]
- 9/08 • of concrete, cement, or asbestos cement, with or without reinforcement (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/10 • of glass or ceramics, e.g. clay, clay tile, porcelain (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/12 • of plastics with or without reinforcement (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/127 • • the walls consisting of a single layer [5, 2006.01]
- 9/128 • • • Reinforced pipes [6, 2006.01]
- 9/133 • • the walls consisting of two layers [5, 2006.01]
- 9/14 • Compound tubes, i.e. made of materials not wholly covered by any one of the preceding groups (F16L 9/16-F16L 9/22 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 9/147 • • comprising only layers of metal and plastics with or without reinforcement [6, 2006.01]
- 9/153 • • comprising only layers of metal and concrete with or without reinforcement [6, 2006.01]
- 9/16 • wound from sheets or strips, with or without reinforcement [1, 2006.01]
- 9/17 • obtained by bending a sheet longitudinally and connecting the edges [6, 2006.01]
- 9/18 • Double-walled pipes; Multi-channel pipes or pipe assemblies [1, 2006.01]
- 9/19 • • Multi-channel pipes or pipe assemblies [4, 2006.01]
- 9/21 • made of sound-absorbing materials or with sound-absorbing structure [7, 2006.01]
- 9/22 • Pipes composed of a plurality of segments [1, 2006.01]
- 11/00 Hoses, i.e. flexible pipes [1, 5, 2006.01]**
- 11/02 • made of fibres or threads, e.g. of textile [1, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • made of rubber or flexible plastics [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • • with homogeneous wall (F16L 11/11 takes precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • • with reinforcements embedded in the wall (F16L 11/11 takes precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • • with reinforcements not embedded in the wall (F16L 11/11 takes precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 11/11 • • with corrugated wall [2, 2006.01]
- 11/112 • • • having reinforcements embedded in the wall [5, 2006.01]
- 11/115 • • • having reinforcements not embedded in the wall [5, 2006.01]
- 11/118 • • • having arrangements for particular purposes, e.g. electrically conducting [5, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • • with arrangements for particular purposes, e.g. specially profiled, with protecting layer, heated, electrically conducting (F16L 11/11 takes precedence) [1, 2, 2006.01]
- 11/127 • • • electrically conducting [5, 2006.01]
- 11/133 • • • buoyant [5, 2006.01]
- 11/14 • made of rigid material, e.g. metal or hard plastics [1, 2006.01]
- 11/15 • • corrugated (F16L 11/16 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 11/16 • • wound from profiled strips or bands [1, 2006.01]
- 11/18 • • Articulated hoses, e.g. composed of a series of rings [1, 2006.01]
- 11/20 • Double-walled hoses [5, 2006.01]
- 11/22 • Multi-channel hoses [5, 2006.01]

## F16L

- 11/24 • wound from strips or bands (F16L 11/16 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 11/26 • made of sound-absorbing materials or with sound-absorbing structure [7, 2006.01]

### Pipe joints; Hose nipples [2]

- 13/00 Non-disconnectable pipe joints, e.g. soldered, adhesive, or caulked joints** (joints for rigid pipes of plastics F16L 47/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/007 • specially adapted for joining pipes of dissimilar materials [5, 2006.01]
- 13/013 • • Accessories therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 13/02 • Welded joints [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • • with arrangements preventing overstressing [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • • with tension-relief of the weld by means of detachable members, e.g. divided tensioning rings, bolts in flanges [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • Soldered joints [1, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • Adhesive or cemented joints [1, 2006.01]
- 13/11 • • using materials which fill the space between parts of a joint before hardening [2, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • with a seal made of lead, caulked packing, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • made by plastically deforming the material of the pipe, e.g. by flanging, rolling [1, 2006.01]
- 13/16 • • the pipe joint consisting of overlapping extremities having mutually co-operating collars [5, 2006.01]
- 15/00 Screw-threaded joints; Forms of screw-threads for such joints [1, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • allowing substantial longitudinal adjustment by the use of a long screw-threaded part [1, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • with additional sealings [2, 2006.01]
- 15/06 • characterised by the shape of the screw-thread [5, 2006.01]
- 15/08 • with supplementary elements (F16L 15/04 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 17/00 Joints with packing adapted to sealing by fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]**
- 17/02 • with sealing rings arranged between outer surface of pipe and inner surface of sleeve or socket [1, 2006.01]
- 17/025 • • the sealing rings having radially directed ribs [5, 2006.01]
- 17/03 • • having annular axial lips [2, 2006.01]
- 17/035 • • • the sealing rings having two lips parallel to each other [5, 2006.01]
- 17/04 • • with longitudinally split or divided sleeve [1, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • with sealing rings arranged between the end surfaces of the pipes or flanges or arranged in recesses in the pipe ends or flanges [1, 2006.01]
- 17/067 • • Plastics sealing rings [6, 2006.01]
- 17/073 • • • the sealing rings having two lips parallel to each other [6, 2006.01]
- 17/08 • • Metal sealing rings [5, 2006.01]
- 17/10 • the packing being sealed by the pressure of a fluid other than the fluid in or surrounding the pipe [5, 2006.01]

- 19/00 Joints in which sealing surfaces are pressed together by means of a member, e.g. a swivel nut, screwed on, or into, one of the joint parts** (F16L 17/00 takes precedence; if using bolts or equivalent connecting means F16L 23/00; connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics F16L 47/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 19/02 • Pipe ends provided with collars or flanges, integral with the pipe or not, pressed together by a screwed member [1, 2006.01]
- 19/025 • • the pipe ends having integral collars or flanges [5, 2006.01]
- 19/028 • • • the collars or flanges being obtained by deformation of the pipe wall [6, 2006.01]
- 19/03 • • with flexible sealing rings between the sealing surfaces [2, 2006.01]
- 19/04 • using additional rigid rings, sealing directly on at least one pipe end, which is flared either before or during the making of the connection [1, 2006.01]
- 19/05 • • with a rigid pressure ring between the screwed member and the exterior of the flared pipe end [5, 2006.01]
- 19/06 • in which radial clamping is obtained by wedging action on non-deformed pipe ends [1, 2006.01]
- 19/065 • • the wedging action being effected by means of a ring [5, 2006.01]
- 19/07 • • adapted for use in socket or sleeve connections [2, 2006.01]
- 19/075 • • specially adapted for spigot-and-socket joints [5, 2006.01]
- 19/08 • with metal rings which bite into the wall of the pipe [1, 2006.01]
- 19/10 • • the profile of the ring being altered [5, 2006.01]
- 19/12 • • • with additional sealing means [5, 2006.01]
- 19/14 • • • the rings being integral with one of the connecting parts [6, 2006.01]
- 21/00 Joints with sleeve or socket** (F16L 13/00, F16L 17/00, F16L 19/00 take precedence; connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics F16L 47/00; specially adapted for pipes of brittle material F16L 49/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/02 • with elastic sealing rings between pipe and sleeve or between pipe and socket, e.g. with rolling or other prefabricated profiled rings (F16L 21/06, F16L 21/08 take precedence; if adjustability is essential F16L 27/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/025 • • Rolling sealing rings [5, 2006.01]
- 21/03 • • placed in the socket before connection (F16L 21/025 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 21/035 • • placed around the spigot end before connection (F16L 21/025 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 21/04 • • in which sealing rings are compressed by axially-movable members [1, 2006.01]
- 21/05 • • comprising a first ring being placed on a male part and a second ring in the sleeve or socket [6, 2006.01]
- 21/06 • with a divided sleeve or ring clamping around the pipe ends (flanged joints F16L 23/00; couplings of the quick-acting type F16L 37/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 21/08 • with additional locking means (F16L 21/06 takes precedence; couplings of the quick-acting type F16L 37/00) [1, 2006.01]

- 23/00 Flanged joints** (F16L 13/00, F16L 17/00, F16L 19/00 take precedence; adjustable joints F16L 27/00; for hoses F16L 33/00; couplings of the quick-acting type F16L 37/00; for double-walled or multi-channel pipes, or pipe assemblies F16L 39/00; connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics F16L 47/00; specially adapted for pipes of brittle material F16L 49/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 23/02 • the flanges being connected by members tensioned axially (F16L 23/12 takes precedence) [2, 5, 2006.01]
  - 23/024 • • characterised by how the flanges are joined to, or form an extension of, the pipes [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/026 • • • by welding [6, 2006.01]
  - 23/028 • • • the flanges being held against a shoulder [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/032 • • characterised by the shape or composition of the flanges [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/036 • • characterised by the tensioning members, e.g. specially adapted bolts or C-clamps [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/04 • the flanges being connected by members tensioned in the radial plane (F16L 23/12 takes precedence) [2, 5, 2006.01]
  - 23/06 • • connected by toggle-action levers (quick acting couplings tightened by toggle-action levers F16L 37/20) [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/08 • • connection by tangentially arranged pin and nut [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/10 • • • with a pivoting or swinging pin [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/12 • specially adapted for particular pipes [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/14 • • for rectangular pipes [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/16 • characterised by the sealing means [5, 2006.01]
  - 23/18 • • the sealing means being rings [6, 2006.01]
  - 23/20 • • • made exclusively of metal [6, 2006.01]
  - 23/22 • • • made exclusively of a material other than metal [6, 2006.01]
  - 23/24 • • specially adapted for unequal expansion of the parts of the joint [6, 2006.01]
- 25/00 Construction or details of pipe joints not provided for in, or of interest apart from, groups F16L 13/00-F16L 23/00** (adjustable or allowing movement F16L 27/00; with fluid cut-off means F16L 29/00; quick-acting F16L 37/00; for double-walled or multi-channel pipes F16L 39/00; connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics F16L 47/00; specially adapted for pipes of brittle material F16L 49/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/01 • specially adapted for realising electrical conduction between the two pipe ends of the joint or between parts thereof [7, 2006.01]
  - 25/02 • specially adapted for electrically insulating the two pipe ends of the joint from each other [2, 2006.01]
  - 25/03 • • in non-disconnectable pipe joints [7, 2006.01]
  - 25/04 • comprising a collar or ring having a threaded pin rigid with the pipe-encircling member [5, 2006.01]
  - 25/06 • comprising radial locking means [5, 2006.01]
  - 25/08 • • in the form of screws, nails or the like [6, 2006.01]
  - 25/10 • Sleeveless joints between two pipes, one being introduced into the other [7, 2006.01]
  - 25/12 • Joints for pipes being spaced apart axially [7, 2006.01]
  - 25/14 • Joints for pipes of different diameters or cross-section [7, 2006.01]
- 27/00 Adjustable joints; Joints allowing movement** (of the quick-acting type F16L 37/50; for double-walled or multi-channel pipes or pipe assemblies F16L 39/04) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 27/02 • Universal joints, i.e. with mechanical connection allowing angular movement or adjustment of the axes of the parts in any direction [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/04 • • with partly-spherical engaging surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/047 • • • held in place by a screwed member having an internal spherical surface [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/053 • • • held in place by bolts passing through flanges [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/06 • • • with special sealing means between the engaging surfaces [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/067 • • • • the sealing means being actuated by the medium pressure [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/073 • • • • one of the cooperating surfaces forming the sealing means [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/08 • allowing adjustment or movement only about the axis of one pipe [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/087 • • Joints with radial fluid passages [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/093 • • • of the "banjo" type, i.e. pivoting right-angle couplings [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/10 • comprising a flexible connection only [1, 2006.01]
  - 27/103 • • in which a flexible element, e.g. a rubber-metal laminate, which undergoes constraints consisting of shear and flexure, is sandwiched between partly curved surfaces [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/107 • • the ends of the pipe being interconnected by a flexible sleeve [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/108 • • • the sleeve having the form of a bellows with only one corrugation [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/11 • • • the sleeve having the form of a bellows with multiple corrugations [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/111 • • • • the bellows being reinforced [6, 2006.01]
  - 27/113 • • the ends of the pipe being interconnected by a rigid sleeve [5, 2006.01]
  - 27/12 • allowing substantial longitudinal adjustment or movement (by use of screw-thread F16L 15/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 Joints with fluid cut-off means** (quick-acting joints with cut-off means F16L 37/28) [1, 2006.01]
- 29/02 • with a cut-off device in one of the two pipe ends, the cut-off device being automatically opened when the coupling is applied [5, 2006.01]
  - 29/04 • with a cut-off device in each of the two pipe ends, the cut-off devices being automatically opened when the coupling is applied [5, 2006.01]
- 31/00 Arrangements for connecting hoses to one another or to flexible sleeves** (F16L 33/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 31/02 • for branching hoses [6, 2006.01]
- 33/00 Arrangements for connecting hoses to rigid members; Rigid hose-connectors, i.e. single members engaging both hoses** (connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics F16L 47/00) [1, 2006.01]
- Note(s) [7]**
- Groups F16L 33/01 and F16L 33/26 take precedence over other subgroups
- 33/01 • specially adapted for hoses having a multi-layer wall [2, 2006.01]

- 33/02 • Hose-clips [1, 2006.01]
- 33/025 • • tightened by deforming radially extending loops or folds [7, 2006.01]
- 33/03 • • Self-locking elastic clips [7, 2006.01]
- 33/035 • • fixed by means of teeth or hooks [7, 2006.01]
- 33/04 • • tightened by tangentially-arranged threaded pin and nut [1, 2006.01]
- 33/06 • • • in which the threaded pin is rigid with the hose-encircling member [1, 2006.01]
- 33/08 • • in which a worm coacts with a part of the hose-encircling member that is toothed like a worm-wheel [1, 2006.01]
- 33/10 • • with a substantially-radial tightening member [1, 2006.01]
- 33/12 • • with a pivoted or swinging tightening or securing member, e.g. toggle lever [1, 2006.01]
- 33/14 • • with a taping-bolt, i.e. winding up the end of the hose-encircling member [1, 2006.01]
- 33/16 • with sealing or securing means using fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]
- 33/18 • characterised by the use of additional sealing means [1, 2006.01]
- 33/20 • Undivided rings, sleeves, or like members contracted on the hose or expanded inside the hose by means of tools; Arrangements using such members [1, 2006.01]
- 33/207 • • only a sleeve being contracted on the hose [5, 2006.01]
- 33/213 • • only a sleeve being expanded inside the hose [5, 2006.01]
- 33/22 • with means not mentioned in the preceding groups for gripping the hose between inner and outer parts [1, 2006.01]
- 33/23 • • the outer parts being segmented, the segments being pressed against the hose by tangentially arranged members [2, 2006.01]
- 33/24 • with parts screwed directly on or into the hose (F16L 33/22 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 33/26 • specially adapted for hoses made of metal [1, 2006.01]
- 33/28 • for hoses with one end terminating in a radial flange or collar [5, 2006.01]
- 33/30 • comprising parts inside the hoses only (F16L 33/24 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 33/32 • comprising parts outside the hoses only (F16L 33/24 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 33/34 • with bonding obtained by vulcanisation, gluing, melting, or the like [7, 2006.01]
- 35/00 Special arrangements used in connection with end fittings of hoses, e.g. safety or protecting devices [1, 2006.01]**
- 37/00 Couplings of the quick-acting type (radially-binding sleeves F16L 17/04, F16L 21/06; connecting hoses to rigid members F16L 33/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 37/02 • in which the connection is maintained only by friction of the parts being joined (F16L 37/22 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/04 • • with an elastic outer part pressing against an inner part by reason of its elasticity (with locking members F16L 37/08) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/05 • • • tightened by the pressure of a mechanical organ [5, 2006.01]
- 37/06 • • • tightened by fluid pressure [1, 2006.01]
- 37/08 • • in which the connection between abutting or axially-overlapping ends is maintained by locking members (F16L 37/22-F16L 37/26 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 37/084 • • combined with automatic locking [5, 2006.01]
- 37/086 • • • by means of latching members pushed radially by spring-like elements [7, 2006.01]
- 37/088 • • • by means of a split elastic ring [5, 2006.01]
- 37/091 • • • by means of a ring provided with teeth or fingers [7, 2006.01]
- 37/092 • • • by means of elements wedged between the pipe and the frusto-conical surface of the body of the connector [5, 2006.01]
- 37/096 • • • by means of hooks hinged about an axis [5, 2006.01]
- 37/098 • • • by means of flexible hooks [7, 2006.01]
- 37/10 • • using a rotary external sleeve or ring on one part [1, 2006.01]
- 37/107 • • • Bayonet-type couplings [7, 2006.01]
- 37/113 • • • the male part having lugs on its periphery penetrating into the corresponding slots provided in the female part [7, 2006.01]
- 37/12 • • using hooks, pawls, or other movable or insertable locking members (F16L 37/084 takes precedence) [1, 5, 2006.01]
- 37/124 • • • using bolts, fixed to a flange, which are able to tilt in slots of another flange, and being maintained there by the tightening of nuts [7, 2006.01]
- 37/127 • • • using hooks hinged about an axis [5, 2006.01]
- 37/133 • • • using flexible hooks [5, 2006.01]
- 37/138 • • • using an axially movable sleeve [7, 2006.01]
- 37/14 • • • Joints secured by inserting between mating surfaces an element, e.g. a piece of wire, a pin, a chain [1, 2006.01]
- 37/15 • • • • the element being a wedge [7, 2006.01]
- 37/16 • • • Joints tightened by the action of wedge-shaped hinged hooks [1, 2006.01]
- 37/18 • • • Joints tightened by eccentrics or rotatable cams [1, 2006.01]
- 37/20 • • • Joints tightened by toggle-action levers [1, 2006.01]
- 37/22 • in which the connection is maintained by means of balls, rollers, or helical springs under radial pressure between the parts [1, 2006.01]
- 37/23 • • by means of balls [5, 2006.01]
- 37/24 • in which the connection is made by inserting one member axially into the other and rotating it to a limited extent, e.g. with bayonet-action [1, 2006.01]
- 37/244 • • the coupling being co-axial with the pipe [5, 2006.01]
- 37/248 • • • Bayonet-type couplings [5, 2006.01]
- 37/252 • • • the male part having lugs on its periphery penetrating into the corresponding slots provided in the female part [5, 2006.01]
- 37/256 • • the coupling not being coaxial with the pipe [5, 2006.01]
- 37/26 • in which the connection is made by transversely moving the parts together, with or without their subsequent rotation [1, 2006.01]
- 37/28 • with fluid cut-off means [1, 2006.01]
- 37/30 • • with fluid cut-off means in each of two pipe-end fittings [5, 2006.01]
- 37/32 • • • at least one of two lift valves being opened automatically when the coupling is applied [5, 2006.01]

- 37/33 • • • the lift valves being of the ball type [7, 2006.01]
- 37/34 • • • at least one of the lift valves being of the sleeve type, i.e. a sleeve being telescoped over an inner cylindrical wall [5, 2006.01]
- 37/35 • • • at least one of the valves having an axial bore communicating with lateral apertures [7, 2006.01]
- 37/36 • • • with two lift valves being actuated to initiate the flow through the coupling after the two coupling parts are locked against withdrawal [5, 2006.01]
- 37/367 • • • with two gate valves or sliding valves [7, 2006.01]
- 37/373 • • • with two taps or cocks [7, 2006.01]
- 37/38 • • with fluid cut-off means in only one of two pipe-end fittings [5, 2006.01]
- 37/40 • • • with a lift valve being opened automatically when the coupling is applied [5, 2006.01]
- 37/407 • • • the lift valve being of the ball type [7, 2006.01]
- 37/413 • • • the lift valve being of the sleeve type, i.e. a sleeve being telescoped over an inner cylindrical wall [7, 2006.01]
- 37/42 • • • the valve having an axial bore communicating with lateral apertures [5, 2006.01]
- 37/44 • • • with one lift valve being actuated to initiate the flow through the coupling after the two coupling parts are locked against withdrawal [5, 2006.01]
- 37/46 • • • with a gate valve or sliding valve [5, 2006.01]
- 37/47 • • • with a tap or cock [7, 2006.01]
- 37/48 • for fastening a pipe on the end of a tap [5, 2006.01]
- 37/50 • adjustable; allowing movement of the parts joined [5, 2006.01]
- 37/52 • • Universal joints, i.e. with a mechanical connection allowing angular movement or adjustment of the axes of the parts in any direction [5, 2006.01]
- 37/53 • • allowing adjustment or movement only about the axis of one pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 37/54 • • for pipes under pressure which are supported only on one side [5, 2006.01]
- 37/56 • for double-walled or multi-channel pipes [5, 2006.01]
- 37/58 • the extremities of the two halves of the joint being pressed against each other without being locked in position [5, 2006.01]
- 37/60 • with plug and fixed wall housing [7, 2006.01]
- 37/62 • pneumatically or hydraulically actuated [7, 2006.01]
- 39/00 Joints or fittings for double-walled or multi-channel pipes or pipe assemblies [1, 2006.01]**
- 39/02 • for hoses [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • allowing adjustment or movement [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • of the multiline swivel type, e.g. comprising a plurality of axially mounted modules [7, 2006.01]
- 41/00 Branching pipes; Joining pipes to walls (F16L 39/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]**
- 41/02 • Branch units, e.g. made in one piece, welded, riveted [1, 2006.01]
- 41/03 • • comprising junction pieces for four or more pipe members [5, 2006.01]
- 41/04 • Tapping pipe walls, i.e. making connections through the walls of pipes while they are carrying fluids; Fittings therefor [1, 2006.01]
- 41/06 • • making use of attaching means embracing the pipe [1, 2006.01]
- 41/08 • Joining pipes to walls or pipes, the joined pipe axis being perpendicular to the plane of a wall or to the axis of another pipe (F16L 41/02 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 41/10 • • the extremity of the pipe being screwed into the wall [5, 2006.01]
- 41/12 • • using attaching means embracing the pipe [5, 2006.01]
- 41/14 • • by screwing an intermediate part against the inside or outside of the wall [5, 2006.01]
- 41/16 • • the branch pipe comprising fluid cut-off means [5, 2006.01]
- 41/18 • the branch pipe being movable [7, 2006.01]
- 43/00 Bends; Siphons (with cleaning apertures F16L 45/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 43/02 • adapted to make use of special securing means [1, 2006.01]
- 45/00 Pipe units with cleaning aperture and closure therefor [1, 2006.01]**
- 47/00 Connecting arrangements or other fittings specially adapted to be made of plastics or to be used with pipes made of plastics [1, 2006.01]**
- 47/02 • Welded joints; Adhesive joints [1, 2006.01]
- 47/03 • • Welded joints with an electrical resistance incorporated in the joint [7, 2006.01]
- 47/04 • with a swivel nut or collar engaging the pipe [2, 2006.01]
- 47/06 • with sleeve or socket formed by or in the pipe end [2, 2006.01]
- 47/08 • • with sealing rings arranged between the outer surface of one pipe end and the inner surface of the sleeve or socket, the sealing rings being placed previously in the sleeve or socket [7, 2006.01]
- 47/10 • • • the sealing rings being maintained in place by additional means [7, 2006.01]
- 47/12 • • with additional locking means [7, 2006.01]
- 47/14 • Flanged joints [7, 2006.01]
- 47/16 • Screw-threaded joints [7, 2006.01]
- 47/18 • Adjustable joints; Joints allowing movement [7, 2006.01]
- 47/20 • based principally on specific properties of plastics [7, 2006.01]
- 47/22 • • using shrink-down material [7, 2006.01]
- 47/24 • • for joints between metal and plastics pipes [7, 2006.01]
- 47/26 • for branching pipes; for joining pipes to walls; Adaptors therefor [7, 2006.01]
- 47/28 • • Joining pipes to walls or to other pipes, the axis of the joined pipe being perpendicular to the wall or to the axis of the other pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 47/30 • • • using attaching means embracing the pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 47/32 • • Branch units, e.g. made in one piece, welded, riveted [7, 2006.01]
- 47/34 • • Tapping pipes, i.e. making connections through walls of pipes while carrying fluids; Fittings therefor [7, 2006.01]
- 49/00 Connecting arrangements, e.g. joints, specially adapted for pipes of brittle material, e.g. glass, earthenware [1, 2006.01]**
- 49/02 • Joints with a sleeve or socket [5, 2006.01]
- 49/04 • Flanged joints [5, 2006.01]

## F16L

- 49/06 • Joints in which sealing surfaces are pressed together by means of a member, e.g. swivel nut, screwed on, or into, one of the joint parts [7, 2006.01]
- 49/08 • Adjustable joints; Joints allowing movement [7, 2006.01]
- 
- 51/00 Expansion-compensation arrangements for pipe-lines** (telescopic pipes F16L 27/12) [1, 2006.01]
- 51/02 • making use of a bellows or an expansible folded or corrugated tube [1, 2006.01]
- 51/03 • • comprising two or more bellows [5, 2006.01]
- 51/04 • making use of bends, e.g. lyre-shaped [1, 2006.01]
- 53/00 Heating of pipes or pipe systems; Cooling of pipes or pipe systems** [1, 2006.01, 2018.01]
- 53/30 • Heating of pipes or pipe systems [2018.01]
- 53/32 • • using hot fluids [2018.01]
- 53/34 • • using electric, magnetic or electromagnetic fields, e.g. induction, dielectric or microwave heating [2018.01]
- 53/35 • • Ohmic-resistance heating [2018.01]
- 53/37 • • • the heating current flowing directly through the pipe to be heated [2018.01]
- 53/38 • • • using elongate electric heating elements, e.g. wires or ribbons [2018.01]
- 53/70 • Cooling of pipes or pipe systems [2018.01]
- 53/75 • • using cooling fins [2018.01]
- 55/00 Devices or appurtenances for use in, or in connection with, pipes or pipe systems** (F16L 1/00-F16L 53/00, F16L 57/00, F16L 59/00 take precedence; repairing or joining pipes on or under water F16L 1/26; cleaning of pipes B08B 9/02, e.g. removal of blockages B08B 9/027; devices for preventing bursting of water pipes by freezing E03B 7/10) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/02 • Energy absorbers; Noise absorbers [1, 2006.01]
- 55/027 • • Throttle passages [5, 2006.01]
- 55/033 • • Noise absorbers (F16L 55/027 takes precedence) [5, 2006.01]
- 55/035 • • • in the form of specially adapted hangers or supports [7, 2006.01]
- 55/04 • Devices damping pulsations or vibrations in fluids [1, 2006.01]
- 55/045 • • specially adapted to prevent or minimise the effects of water hammer [5, 2006.01]
- 55/05 • • • Buffers therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 55/052 • • • • Pneumatic reservoirs [7, 2006.01]
- 55/053 • • • • • the gas in the reservoir being separated from the fluid in the pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 55/054 • • • • • the reservoir being placed in or around the pipe from which it is separated by a sleeve-shaped membrane [7, 2006.01]
- 55/055 • • • Valves therefor [5, 2006.01]
- 55/07 • Arrangement or mounting of devices, e.g. valves, for venting or aerating or draining (apparatus for draining F16T) [2, 2006.01]
- 55/09 • Air-conditioning, e.g. de-watering, in pneumatic systems [1, 2006.01]
- 55/10 • Means for stopping flow in pipes or hoses (F16L 29/00, F16L 37/28 take precedence; valves F16K) [1, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/103 • • by temporarily freezing liquid sections in the pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 55/105 • • Closing devices introduced radially into the pipe or hose [5, 2006.01]
- 55/11 • • Plugs [5, 2006.01]
- 55/115 • • Caps [5, 2006.01]
- 55/12 • • by introducing into the pipe a member expandable in situ (inflatable cut-off valves F16K 7/10) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/124 • • • introduced radially into the pipe or hose [5, 2006.01]
- 55/128 • • • introduced axially into the pipe or hose [5, 2006.01]
- 55/13 • • • the closure device being a plug fixed by plastic deformation [7, 2006.01]
- 55/132 • • • • the closure device being a plug fixed by radially deforming the packing [5, 2006.01]
- 55/134 • • • • • by means of an inflatable packing [7, 2006.01]
- 55/136 • • • • the closure device being a plug fixed by radially expanding or deforming a split ring, hooks or the like [5, 2006.01]
- 55/16 • Devices for covering leaks in pipes or hoses, e.g. hose-menders [1, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/162 • • from inside the pipe (specially adapted for bends, branch units, branching pipes, or the like F16L 55/179) [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/163 • • • a ring, a band or a sleeve being pressed against the inner surface of the pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 55/164 • • • a sealing fluid being introduced in the pipe (F16L 55/1645 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 55/1645 • • • a sealing material being introduced inside the pipe by means of a tool moving in the pipe [7, 2006.01]
- 55/165 • • • a pipe being inserted in the damaged section [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/168 • • from outside the pipe (specially adapted for bends, branch units, branching pipes, or the like F16L 55/179) [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/17 • • • by means of rings, bands or sleeves pressed against the outside surface of the pipe or hose [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/172 • • • • the ring, band or sleeve being tightened by a tangentially arranged threaded pin and a nut [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/175 • • • by using materials which fill a space around the pipe before hardening [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/178 • • • by clamping an outer gasket against a joint with sleeve or socket [5, 7, 2006.01]
- 55/179 • • specially adapted for bends, branch units, branching pipes or the like [7, 2006.01]
- 55/18 • Appliances for use in repairing pipes (F16L 55/10 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 55/24 • Preventing accumulation of dirt or other matter in pipes, e.g. by traps, by strainers [1, 2006.01]
- 55/26 • Pigs or moles, i.e. devices movable in a pipe or conduit with or without self-contained propulsion means [5, 2006.01]

### Note(s) [5]

1. Pigs or moles specially adapted for particular applications are classified in the relevant places for the applications, e.g.
  - stopping flow from or in pipes or hoses F16L 55/12;
  - repairing pipes F16L 55/18;
  - applying liquids or other fluent materials to the inside of tubes B05C 7/08;
  - cleaning pipes or tubes or systems of pipes or tubes B08B 9/02;

- welding or cutting B23K 37/02;
  - earth drilling E21B;
  - cleaning chimneys F23J 3/02;
  - cleaning internal or external surfaces of heat-exchange or heat-transfer conduits F28G;
  - measuring, testing G01;
  - inspection of vessels in nuclear reactors G21C 17/003;
  - inspection or maintenance of pipe-lines or tubes in nuclear installations G21C 17/017;
  - installing electric, or combined optical and electric, cables or lines H02G.
2. In this group, it is desirable to add the indexing codes of group F16L 101/00.
- 55/28 • • Constructional aspects [6, 2006.01]
- 55/30 • • • of the propulsion means, e.g. towed by cables [6, 2006.01]
- 55/32 • • • • being self-contained [6, 2006.01]
- 55/34 • • • • • the pig or mole being moved step by step [6, 2006.01]
- 55/36 • • • • • jet driven [6, 2006.01]
- 55/38 • • • • • driven by fluid pressure [6, 2006.01]
- 55/40 • • • • of the body [6, 2006.01]
- 55/42 • • • • gelled or degradable [6, 2006.01]
- 55/44 • • • • expandable [6, 2006.01]
- 55/46 • • Launching or retrieval of pigs or moles [6, 2006.01]
- 55/48 • • Indicating the position of the pig or mole in the pipe or conduit [6, 2006.01]
- 57/00 Protection of pipes or objects of similar shape against external or internal damage or wear** (supporting of pipes inside other pipes or sleeves F16L 7/00; used in connection with end fittings of hoses F16L 35/00; protection of pipes or pipe fittings against corrosion or incrustation F16L 58/00; protection thereof during transport B65D 59/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 57/02 • against cracking or buckling [7, 2006.01]
- 57/04 • against fire or other external sources of extreme heat [7, 2006.01]
- 57/06 • against wear (F16L 57/04 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 58/00 Protection of pipes or pipe fittings against corrosion or incrustation** (compound tubes F16L 9/14) [1, 2006.01]
- 58/02 • by means of internal or external coatings [2, 2006.01]
- 58/04 • • Coatings characterised by the materials used (F16L 58/16 takes precedence) [2, 2006.01]
- 58/06 • • • by cement, concrete, or the like [2, 2006.01]
- 58/08 • • • by metal [2, 2006.01]
- 58/10 • • • by rubber or plastics [2, 2006.01]
- 58/12 • • • by tar or bitumen [2, 2006.01]
- 58/14 • • • by ceramic or vitreous materials [2, 2006.01]
- 58/16 • • the coating being in the form of a bandage [2, 2006.01]
- 58/18 • specially adapted for pipe fittings [2, 2006.01]
- 59/00 Thermal insulation in general** [1, 2006.01]
- 59/02 • Shape or form of insulating materials, with or without coverings integral with the insulating materials [1, 2006.01]
- 59/04 • Arrangements using dry fillers, e.g. using slag wool [1, 2006.01]
- 59/05 • • in prefabricated shells or covers [2, 2006.01]
- 59/06 • Arrangements using an air layer or vacuum [1, 2006.01]
- 59/065 • • using vacuum (F16L 59/075 takes precedence) [7, 2006.01]
- 59/07 • • the air layer being enclosed by one or more layers of insulation [7, 2006.01]
- 59/075 • • the air layer or the vacuum being delimited by longitudinal channels distributed around the circumference of a tube [7, 2006.01]
- 59/08 • Means for preventing radiation, e.g. with metal foil [1, 2006.01]
- 59/10 • Bandages or covers for the protection of the insulation, e.g. against the influence of the environment or against mechanical damage (integral with insulating materials F16L 59/02) [1, 2006.01]
- 59/11 • • Rigid covers for elbows [7, 2006.01]
- 59/12 • Arrangements for supporting insulation from the wall or body insulated, e.g. by means of spacers between pipe and heat-insulating material; Arrangements specially adapted for supporting insulated bodies [1, 2006.01]
- 59/125 • • Helical spacers [7, 2006.01]
- 59/13 • • Resilient supports [7, 2006.01]
- 59/135 • • Hangers or supports specially adapted for insulated pipes [7, 2006.01]
- 59/14 • Arrangements for the insulation of pipes or pipe systems (F16L 59/02-F16L 59/12 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 59/147 • • the insulation being located inwardly of the outer surface of the pipe [5, 2006.01]
- 59/15 • • for underground pipes [7, 2006.01]
- 59/153 • • for flexible pipes [5, 2006.01]
- 59/16 • • Arrangements specially adapted to local requirements at flanges, junctions, valves, or the like [1, 2006.01]
- 59/18 • • • adapted for joints [5, 2006.01]
- 59/20 • • • • for non-disconnectable joints [5, 2006.01]
- 59/21 • • • adapted for expansion-compensation devices [7, 2006.01]
- 59/22 • • • adapted for bends [5, 2006.01]
- Indexing scheme associated with groups F16L 55/26-F16L 55/48, relating to uses and applications of pigs or moles. [6]**
- 101/00 Uses or applications of pigs or moles [6, 2006.01]**
- 
- 101/10 • Treating the inside of pipes [6, 2006.01]
- 101/12 • • Cleaning [6, 2006.01]
- 101/14 • • Drying [6, 2006.01]
- 101/16 • • Coating by application of fluent materials, e.g. painting [6, 2006.01]
- 101/18 • • Lining other than coating [6, 2006.01]
- 101/20 • Expelling gases or fluids [6, 2006.01]
- 101/30 • Inspecting, measuring or testing [6, 2006.01]
- 101/40 • Separating transported fluids [6, 2006.01]
- 101/50 • Pulling cables or the like [6, 2006.01]
- 101/60 • Stopping leaks [6, 2006.01]
- 101/70 • Drill-well operations [6, 2006.01]

**F16M FRAMES, CASINGS OR BEDS OF ENGINES, MACHINES OR APPARATUS, NOT SPECIFIC TO ENGINES, MACHINES OR APPARATUS PROVIDED FOR ELSEWHERE; STANDS; SUPPORTS**

**Note(s)**

Attention is drawn to the following places:

B21B 31/02.....Metal-rolling stand frames

G01D 11/30.....Supports specially adapted for indicating or recording instruments.

**Subclass index**

**FRAMES, CASINGS, OR BEDS**

Displaceable..... 3/00  
 For engines, machines, or apparatus..... 1/00, 5/00  
 Foundations; details..... 9/00, 7/00

**STANDS OR SUPPORTS..... 11/00, 13/00**

- |              |   |              |   |
|--------------|---|--------------|---|
| <b>1/00</b>  | <b>Frames or casings of engines, machines, or apparatus; Frames serving as machinery beds [1, 2, 2006.01]</b>   | 11/04        | • • Means for attachment of apparatus; Means allowing adjustment of the apparatus relatively to the stand [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/02         | • for reciprocating engines or similar machines [1, 2006.01]  | 11/06        | • • • allowing pivoting [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/021        | • • for housing crankshafts [1, 2006.01]  | 11/08        | • • • • around a vertical axis [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/022        | • • • of tunnel type, i.e. wherein the crankshaft can only be introduced axially (for engines or machines with star-shaped cylinder arrangement F16M 1/023) [1, 2006.01]  | 11/10        | • • • • around a horizontal axis [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/023        | • • • specially adapted for engines or machines with star-shaped cylinder arrangement [1, 2006.01]  | 11/12        | • • • • in more than one direction [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/024        | • • • facilitating assembly of power-transmitting parts of engines or machines, e.g. of connecting-rods [1, 2006.01]  | 11/14        | • • • • with ball-joint (ball-jointed hinges F16C 11/06) [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/025        | • • • Assembling bearings in casings, e.g. having anchor bolts [1, 2006.01]   | 11/16        | • • Details concerning attachment of head-supporting legs, with or without actuation of locking members therefor [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/026        | • • for housing movable engine or machine parts other than crankshafts, e.g. valve-gear housings [1, 2006.01]   | 11/18        | • • with mechanism for moving the apparatus relatively to the stand [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/04         | • for rotary engines or similar machines [1, 2006.01]   | 11/20        | • Undercarriages with or without wheels [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/08         | • characterised by being built-up of sheet material or welded parts [1, 2006.01]  | 11/22        | • • with approximately constant height, e.g. with constant length of column or of legs (F16M 11/42 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]   |
| <b>3/00</b>  | <b>Portable or wheeled frames or beds, e.g. for emergency power-supply aggregates, compressor sets (construction of vehicles in general B60-B62) [1, 2006.01]</b>   | 11/24        | • • changeable in height or length of legs, also for transport only (F16M 11/42 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]  |
| <b>5/00</b>  | <b>Engine beds, i.e. means for supporting engines or machines on foundations [1, 2006.01]</b>   | 11/26        | • • • by telescoping, with or without folding (details concerning the constructional features of telescoping parts only F16B 7/10) [1, 2006.01]   |
| <b>7/00</b>  | <b>Details of attaching or adjusting engine beds, frames, or supporting-legs on foundation or base; Attaching non-moving engine parts, e.g. cylinder blocks (elastic or equivalent mounting for absorbing vibrations F16F, especially F16F 15/04) [1, 2006.01]</b>                      | 11/28        | • • • • Undercarriages for supports with one single telescoping pillar [1, 2006.01]   |
| <b>9/00</b>  | <b>Special layout of foundations with respect to machinery to be supported (foundations for machinery E02D 27/44) [1, 2006.01]</b>  | 11/30        | • • • • • with co-moving side-struts [1, 2006.01]   |
| <b>11/00</b> | <b>Stands or trestles as supports for apparatus or articles placed thereon (without heads F16M 13/00; easels or stands for blackboards or the like A47B 97/04; show-stands A47F 7/00; for workmen E04G 1/32; supporting or suspending for lighting devices F21V 21/00) [1, 2006.01]</b> | 11/32        | • • • • • Undercarriages for supports with three or more telescoping legs [1, 2006.01]  |
| 11/02        | • Heads [1, 2006.01]  | 11/34        | • • • • • Members limiting spreading of legs [1, 2006.01]   |
|              |   | 11/36        | • • • • • Members preventing slipping of the feet [1, 2006.01]  |
|              |   | 11/38        | • • • by folding [1, 2006.01]   |
|              |   | 11/40        | • • • by means of coilable or bendable legs [1, 2006.01]  |
|              |   | 11/42        | • with arrangement for propelling the support [1, 2006.01]  |
|              |   | <b>13/00</b> | <b>Other supports for positioning apparatus or articles (heads thereof F16M 11/02; adapted to be stuck in the ground A45F 3/44); Means for steadying hand-held apparatus or articles [1, 2006.01]</b> |
|              |   | 13/02        | • for supporting on, or attaching to, an object, e.g. tree, gate, window-frame, cycle [1, 2006.01]  |
|              |   | 13/04        | • for supporting on, or holding steady relative to, a person, e.g. by chains [1, 2006.01]   |

- 13/06 • also serviceable for other purposes, e.g. to be used as spade, chair, ski-stick [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • for use as a walking-cane [1, 2006.01]

**F16N LUBRICATING**

**Note(s) [2006.01]**

Attention is drawn to the following places, which cover lubrication of specific apparatus or in particular processes:

- A01D 69/12.....Harvesters
- B21B 25/04.....Mandrels for metal tube rolling mills
- B21B 27/06.....Rolls for metal rolling mills
- B21D 37/18.....Tools for machines for working metal without removing material
- B21J 3/00.....Forging or pressing
- B22D 11/07.....Moulds for continuous casting of metals
- B23C 5/28.....Milling cutters
- B23D 59/02, B23D 59/04.....Metal saws
- B23Q 11/10, B23Q 11/12.....Machine tools
- B25D 17/26.....Portable power-driven percussive tools
- B26B 19/40.....Hair-clippers or dry-shavers
- B27B 13/12.....Band saw blades for wood or the like
- B60R 17/00.....Vehicles
- B61B 12/08.....Cable systems for railways
- B61C 17/08.....Railway locomotives
- B61F 17/00.....Axle-boxes of rail vehicles
- B61K 3/00.....Rail or wheel flanges of railways
- B62D 55/092.....Endless-track units for vehicles
- B62J 31/00.....Cycles
- B65G 45/02.....Conveyors
- B66B 7/12.....Ropes, cables or guides of elevators
- D01H 7/20.....Spindles of machines for spinning or twisting threads or fibres
- D04B 35/28.....Knitting machines
- D05B 71/00.....Sewing machines
- D05C 13/04.....Embroidering machines
- E01B 7/26.....Switches for railways
- E05B 17/08.....Locks
- E05D 11/02.....Hinges
- E21B 10/22.....Roller bits for earth drilling
- F01C 21/04.....Rotary-piston or oscillating-piston machines or engines
- F01D 25/18.....Non-positive-displacement machines
- F01M.....Machines or engines in general
- F02C 7/06.....Gas-turbine plants
- F02F 1/20.....Cylinders of combustion engines
- F04B 39/02.....Pumps for liquids
- F04C 29/02.....Rotary-piston or oscillating-piston pumps for liquids
- F04D 29/04.....Non-positive-displacement pumps
- F16C 1/24.....Flexible shafts
- F16C 33/10.....Sliding-contact bearings
- F16C 33/66.....Ball or roller bearings
- F16F 1/24.....Springs
- F16H 57/04.....Transmissions
- F41A 29/04.....Smallarms or ordnance
- G04B 31/08.....Clocks
- H01R 39/56.....Rotary current collectors, distributors or interrupters

**Subclass index**

MODIFICATIONS OF APPARATUS OR MACHINES TO ENSURE LUBRICATION.....	1/00
LUBRICATION DEVICES	
Stationary; mobile; manual.....	7/00, 11/00, 9/00, 3/00, 5/00
Lubricating-pumps.....	13/00
Details: reservoirs; conduits; check valves.....	19/00, 21/00, 23/00
EQUIPMENT FOR DISTRIBUTION, PROPORTIONING, SAFETY, CONTROL, CLEANING.....	23/00-33/00
HANDLING OF LUBRICANTS, STORAGE.....	33/00-39/00
SPECIAL LUBRICATION.....	15/00, 17/00
SUBJECT MATTER NOT PROVIDED FOR IN OTHER GROUPS OF THIS SUBCLASS.....	99/00

**Lubrication devices or arrangements for oil or grease**

- 1/00** **Constructional modifications of parts of machines or apparatus for the purpose of lubrication [1, 2006.01]**
- 3/00** **Devices for supplying lubricant by manual action [1, 2006.01]**
- 3/02 • delivering oil [1, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • Oil cans; Oil syringes [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • • delivering on squeezing [1, 2006.01]
- 3/08 • • • incorporating a piston-pump [1, 2006.01]
- 3/10 • delivering grease [1, 2006.01]
- 3/12 • • Grease guns [1, 2006.01]
- 5/00** **Apparatus with hand-positioned nozzle supplied with lubricant under pressure (F16N 3/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]**
- 5/02 • Nozzles or nozzle-valve arrangements therefor, e.g. high-pressure grease guns [1, 2006.01]
- 7/00** **Arrangements for supplying oil or unspecified lubricant from a stationary reservoir or the equivalent in or on the machine or member to be lubricated [1, 2006.01]**
- 7/02 • with gravity feed or drip lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 7/04 • • with oil flow promoted by vibration [1, 2006.01]
- 7/06 • • Arrangements in which the droplets are visible [1, 2006.01]
- 7/08 • • controlled by means of the temperature of the member to be lubricated [1, 2006.01]
- 7/10 • • incorporating manually-operated control means, e.g. spindles [1, 2006.01]
- 7/12 • with feed by capillary action, e.g. by wicks [1, 2006.01]
- 7/14 • the lubricant being conveyed from the reservoir by mechanical means (by pumping devices F16N 7/36, F16N 7/38) [1, 2006.01]
- 7/16 • • the oil being carried up by a lifting device [1, 2006.01]
- 7/18 • • • with one or more feed members fixed on a shaft [1, 2006.01]
- 7/20 • • • with one or more members moving around the shaft to be lubricated [1, 2006.01]
- 7/22 • • • • shaped as rings [1, 2006.01]
- 7/24 • • • with discs, rollers, belts, or the like contacting the shaft to be lubricated [1, 2006.01]
- 7/26 • • Splash lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 7/28 • • Dip lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 7/30 • the oil being fed or carried along by another fluid [1, 2006.01]
- 7/32 • • Mist lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 7/34 • • • Atomising devices for oil [1, 2006.01]
- 7/36 • with feed by pumping action of the member to be lubricated or of a shaft of the machine; Centrifugal lubrication [1, 2006.01]
- 7/38 • with a separate pump; Central lubrication systems [1, 2006.01]
- 7/40 • • in a closed circulation system [1, 2006.01]
- 9/00** **Arrangements for supplying oil or unspecified lubricant from a moving reservoir or the equivalent (also usable with a stationary reservoir F16N 7/00) [1, 2006.01]**
- 9/02 • with reservoir on or in a rotary member [1, 2006.01]
- 9/04 • with reservoir on or in a reciprocating, rocking, or swinging member [1, 2006.01]

- 11/00** **Arrangements for supplying grease from a stationary reservoir or the equivalent in or on the machine or member to be lubricated; Grease cups [1, 2006.01]**
- 11/02 • Hand-actuated grease cups, e.g. Stauffer cups [1, 2006.01]
- 11/04 • Spring-loaded devices [1, 2006.01]
- 11/06 • Weight-loaded devices [1, 2006.01]
- 11/08 • with mechanical drive, other than directly by springs or weights (lubricating-pumps F16N 13/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 11/10 • by pressure of another fluid [1, 2006.01]
- 11/12 • by centrifugal action [1, 2006.01]

- 13/00** **Lubricating-pumps (oil cans with pump F16N 3/08) [1, 2006.01]**
- 13/02 • with reciprocating piston (pumps with distributing equipment F16N 13/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/04 • • Adjustable reciprocating pumps [1, 2006.01]
- 13/06 • • Actuation of lubricating-pumps [1, 2006.01]
- 13/08 • • • by hand [1, 2006.01]
- 13/10 • • • with mechanical drive (F16N 13/18 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/12 • • • • with ratchet [1, 2006.01]
- 13/14 • • • • with cam or wobble-plate on shaft parallel to the pump cylinder or cylinders [1, 2006.01]
- 13/16 • • • with fluid drive [1, 2006.01]
- 13/18 • • • relative movement of pump parts being produced by inertia of one of the parts or of a driving member [1, 2006.01]
- 13/20 • Rotary pumps (with distributing equipment F16N 13/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 13/22 • with distributing equipment [1, 2006.01]
- 15/00** **Lubrication with substances other than oil or grease; Lubrication characterised by the use of particular lubricants in particular apparatus or conditions (F16N 17/00 takes precedence; lubricating compositions, selection of particular substances as lubricants in general C10M) [1, 2006.01]**
- 15/02 • with graphite or graphite-containing compositions [1, 2006.01]
- 15/04 • with water [1, 2006.01]
- 17/00** **Lubrication of machines or apparatus working under extreme conditions (additives to lubricating oil or lubricating grease C10M) [1, 2006.01]**
- 17/02 • at high temperature [1, 2006.01]
- 17/04 • at low temperature [1, 2006.01]
- 17/06 • in vacuum or under reduced pressure (of rotary anodes of X-ray tubes H01J 35/10) [1, 2006.01]

**Details of lubricators or lubrication systems**

- 19/00** **Lubricant containers for use in lubricators or lubrication systems [1, 2006.01]**
- 21/00** **Conduits; Junctions; Fittings for lubrication apertures [1, 2006.01]**
- 21/02 • Lubricating nipples [1, 2006.01]
- 21/04 • Nozzles for connection of lubricating equipment to nipples [1, 2006.01]
- 21/06 • Covering members for nipples, conduits, or apertures [1, 2006.01]
- 23/00** **Special adaptations of check valves [1, 2006.01]**

- 25/00 **Distributing equipment** (combined with oil pump F16N 13/22) [1, 2006.01]
- 25/02 • with reciprocating distributing slide valve [1, 2006.01]
- 25/04 • with rotary distributing member [1, 2006.01]
- 27/00 **Proportioning devices** [1, 2006.01]
- 27/02 • Gating equipment [1, 2006.01]
- 29/00 **Special means in lubricating arrangements or systems providing for the indication or detection of undesired conditions; Use of devices responsive to conditions in lubricating arrangements or systems** [1, 2006.01]
- 29/02 • for influencing the supply of lubricant [1, 2006.01]
- 29/04 • enabling a warning to be given; enabling moving parts to be stopped [1, 2006.01]
- 31/00 **Means for collecting, retaining, or draining-off lubricant in or on machines or apparatus** [1, 2006.01]
- 31/02 • Oil catchers; Oil wipers (oil-scraping rings for pistons F16J 9/20) [1, 2006.01]

- 33/00 **Mechanical arrangements for cleaning lubricating equipment; Special racks or the like for use in draining lubricant from machine parts** [1, 2006.01]

#### Care of lubricants

- 35/00 **Storage of lubricants in engine-rooms or the like** [1, 2006.01]
- 37/00 **Equipment for transferring lubricant from one container to another** [1, 2006.01]
- 37/02 • for filling grease guns [1, 2006.01]
- 39/00 **Arrangements for conditioning of lubricants in the lubricating system** (cleaning of lubricating oil, lubricating compositions C10M) [1, 2006.01]
- 39/02 • by cooling [1, 2006.01]
- 39/04 • by heating [1, 2006.01]
- 39/06 • by filtration [1, 2006.01]
- 39/08 • by diluting, e.g. by addition of fuel [1, 2006.01]

- 99/00 **Subject matter not provided for in other groups of this subclass** [2006.01]

## F16P SAFETY DEVICES IN GENERAL

### Note(s) [7]

Attention is drawn to the following places:

- A01D 75/18, A01D 75/20.....Harvesters or mowers
- A01F 21/00.....Threshing machines or baling presses
- B02C 23/04.....Crushing or disintegrating machines
- B21B 33/00.....Rolling of metal
- B21D 55/00.....Working sheet metal or tubes, rods or profiles without essentially removing material
- B23B 25/04.....Turning-machines
- B23Q 11/00.....Machine tools
- B24B 55/00.....Grinding or polishing machines
- B25D 17/10.....Portable power-driven percussive tools
- B25J 19/06.....Manipulators
- B26D 7/22.....Cutting machines
- B27G 19/00.....Wood saws
- B65B 57/00.....Packaging machines or apparatus
- B65G 43/00.....Conveyors
- B65H 26/00.....Web-advancing mechanisms
- B65H 63/00.....Handling or winding of thin or filamentary material
- D01G 31/00.....Treatment of fibres
- D01H 13/14.....Spinning or twisting
- D05B 83/00.....Sewing machines
- F21V 25/00.....Lighting devices.

### Devices protecting or preventing injuries to people

- 1/00 **Safety devices independent of the control or operation of any machine** (protective devices for the eyes or ears, worn on the body or carried in the hand, A61F 9/00, A61F 11/00) [1, 2006.01]
- 1/02 • Fixed screens or hoods [1, 2006.01]
- 1/04 • Screens or hoods rotating with rotary shafts [1, 2006.01]
- 1/06 • specially designed for welding [1, 2006.01]

- 3/00 **Safety devices acting in conjunction with the control or operation of a machine; Control arrangements requiring the simultaneous use of two or more parts of the body** (F16P 5/00 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]
- 3/02 • Screens or other safety members moving in synchronism with members which move to and fro [1, 2006.01]
- 3/04 • • for machines with parts which approach one another during operation, e.g. for stamping presses [1, 2006.01]
- 3/06 • • • in which body parts of the operator are removed from the danger zone on approach of the machine parts [1, 2006.01]

## F16P

- |      |   |      |  |
|------|---|------|--|
| 3/08 | • in connection with the locking of doors, covers, guards, or like members giving access to moving machine parts [1, 2006.01]   | 3/22 | • • for hydraulic or pneumatic control systems [1, 2006.01]  |
| 3/10 | • • in which the operation of locking the door or other member causes the machine to start [1, 2006.01]   | 3/24 | • • for mechanical controls [1, 2006.01]   |
| 3/12 | • with means, e.g. feelers, which in case of the presence of a body part of a person in or near the danger zone influence the control or operation of the machine (F16P 3/08 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01] |      |  |
| 3/14 | • • the means being photocells or other devices sensitive without mechanical contact [1, 2006.01]   | 5/00 | <b>Emergency means for rendering ineffective a coupling conveying reciprocating movement if the motion of the driven part is prematurely resisted [1, 2006.01]</b> |
| 3/16 | • • with feeling members moved by the machine [1, 2006.01]  | 7/00 | <b>Emergency devices preventing damage to a machine or apparatus (F16P 1/00, F16P 3/00, F16P 5/00 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]</b>                                |
| 3/18 | • Control arrangements requiring the use of both hands [1, 2006.01]   | 7/02 | • by causing the machine to stop on the occurrence of dangerous conditions therein (devices in bearings affected by abnormal conditions F16C) [1, 2006.01]         |
| 3/20 | • • for electric control systems [1, 2006.01]   |      |  |

## F16S CONSTRUCTIONAL ELEMENTS IN GENERAL; STRUCTURES BUILT-UP FROM SUCH ELEMENTS, IN GENERAL

### Note(s)

This subclass does not cover similar elements and structures, restricted to use in the building art, which are covered by subclass E04C.

- |      |  |      |   |
|------|--|------|---|
| 1/00 | <b>Sheets, panels, or other members of similar proportions; Constructions comprising assemblies of such members</b> (built-up gratings F16S 3/00; layered products B32B) [1, 2006.01]  | 1/12 | • of substantial thickness, e.g. with varying thickness, with channels [1, 2006.01]   |
|      | <b>Note(s)</b><br>In this group, the members may be generally flat or curved, but they may depart from such shape in detail over part or all of their area, e.g. they may be corrugated, ribbed, flanged; ribs, flanges, or the like may be separately formed. | 1/14 | • Assemblies of such members with members of forms covered by group F16S 3/00 or F16S 5/00 (such other members being for jointing only F16S 1/02) [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/02 | • designed for being secured together edge to edge, e.g. at an angle; Assemblies thereof [1, 2006.01]  | 3/00 | <b>Elongated members, e.g. profiled members; Assemblies thereof; Gratings or grilles</b> (gratings or grilles formed from a sheet or the like F16S 1/00, particularly F16S 1/08; frames for doors, windows or the like E06B 1/00, E06B 3/00) [1, 2006.01] |
| 1/04 | • produced by deforming or otherwise working a flat sheet (honeycomb or other core members for layered products B32B 3/00, e.g. B32B 3/12, B32B 3/24, B32B 3/26) [1, 2006.01]  | 3/02 | • composed of two or more elongated members secured together side by side [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/06 | • • by deforming only [1, 2006.01]   | 3/04 | • designed for being joined to similar members in various relative positions [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/08 | • • by cutting or perforating, with or without deformation [1, 2006.01]  | 3/06 | • Assemblies of elongated members (F16S 3/02, F16S 3/04 take precedence) [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/10 | • Composite members, e.g. with ribs or flanges attached (F16S 1/02 takes precedence) [1, 2006.01]  | 3/08 | • • forming frameworks, e.g. gratings [1, 2006.01]  |
|      |  | 5/00 | <b>Other constructional members not restricted to an application fully provided for in a single class [1, 2006.01]</b>  |

## F16T STEAM TRAPS OR LIKE APPARATUS FOR DRAINING-OFF LIQUIDS FROM ENCLOSURES PREDOMINANTLY CONTAINING GASES OR VAPOURS

- |      |   |      |   |
|------|---|------|---|
| 1/00 | <b>Steam traps or like apparatus for draining-off liquids from enclosures predominantly containing gases or vapours, e.g. gas lines, steam lines, containers [1, 2006.01]</b> | 1/16 | • • involving a high-pressure chamber and a low-pressure chamber communicating with one another, i.e. thermodynamic steam chambers [1, 2006.01] |
| 1/02 | • with valves controlled thermally [1, 2006.01]   | 1/18 | • • involving a vacuum chamber [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/04 | • • by expansion rods [1, 2006.01]  | 1/20 | • with valves controlled by floats [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/06 | • • by expansion tubes [1, 2006.01]   | 1/22 | • • of closed-hollow-body type [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/08 | • • by bimetallic strips or plates [1, 2006.01]   | 1/24 | • • • using levers [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/10 | • • by thermally-expansive liquids [1, 2006.01]   | 1/26 | • • of upright-open-bucket type [1, 2006.01]  |
| 1/12 | • with valves controlled by excess or release of pressure [1, 2006.01]  | 1/28 | • • • using levers [1, 2006.01]   |
| 1/14 | • • involving a piston, diaphragm, or bellows, e.g. displaceable under pressure of incoming condensate [1, 2006.01]   | 1/30 | • • of inverted-open-bucket type; of bell type [1, 2006.01]   |
|      |   | 1/32 | • • of rocking or tilting type [1, 2006.01]   |

- 1/34 • without moving parts other than hand valves, e.g. labyrinth type [1, 2006.01]
- 1/36 • specially adapted for steam lines of low pressure [1, 2006.01]
- 1/38 • Component parts; Accessories [1, 2006.01]
- 1/40 • • Actuating mechanisms of ball valves [1, 2006.01]
- 1/42 • • Actuating mechanisms of slide valves [1, 2006.01]
- 1/45 • • Means for venting or aerating (separate devices therefor F16K 24/00) [2, 2006.01]
- 1/48 • • Monitoring arrangements for inspecting, e.g. flow of steam and steam condensate [1, 2006.01]